



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>











LIBRARIES

RESOURCES

STUDY

TEACHING

STUDENT

INTEREST

LIBRARIES

STUDY

TEACHING

STUDENT

STUDENT

UNIVERSITY









Early English Text Society.

---

Sin Gawayne

and

The Green Knight:

AN ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE-POEM,

(AB. 1320-30 A.D.)

BY THE AUTHOR OF

EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS.

RE-EDITED FROM COTTON. MS. NERO, A. X., IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

BY

RICHARD MORRIS,

EDITOR OF HAMPOLE'S "PRICKE OF CONSCIENCE," "EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS," ETC.;  
MEMBER OF THE COUNCIL OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXIV.

*Price Ten Shillings.*

*The Philological Society has issued the following Early English Texts, which can be procured of ASHER & Co., 13, Bedford Street, Covent Garden, W.C. :—*

1. "EARLY ENGLISH POEMS AND LIVES OF SAINTS," (with those of the Wicked Birds Pilate and Judas), 1250-1460. Edited by F. J. FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A. 5s. (Phil. Soc. Trans., Part II., 1858.)
2. "THE PLAY OF THE SACRAMENT," a Middle-English Drama. Edited by WHITLEY STOKES, Esq., M.A. 5s. (Phil. Soc. Trans., Part II., 1860-61.)
4. "LIBER CURE COCORUM," a Cookery Book in verse, about 1440 A.D. Edited by RICHARD MORRIS, Esq. 3s.
4. "THE PRICKE OF CONSCIENCE" (Stimulus Conscientiæ). A Northumbrian Poem, by RICHARD ROLLE DE HAMPOLE, about A.D. 1340. Edited, with an Introduction, Notes, and Glossarial Index, by RICHARD MORRIS, Esq., 12s.
5. "CASTEL OFF LOUE," (Chateau d'Amour, or Carmen de Creatione Mundi), from the French of Bishop Grosseteste, early 14th century. Edited, with Notes and Glossary, by R. F. WEYMOUTH, Esq., M.A. 6s.

# TRÜBNER & CO'S

## LINGUISTIC PUBLICATIONS.

**Bleek.**—REYNARD in SOUTH AFRICA; or, Hottentot Fables. Translated from the original Manuscript in Sir George Grey's Library. By Dr. W. H. I. BLEEK, Librarian of the Grey Library, Cape Town, Cape of Good Hope. In one volume, small 8vo., cloth. 3s. 6d.

**Coleridge.**—A GLOSSARIAL INDEX to the printed English Literature of the Thirteenth Century. By HERBERT COLERIDGE, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo., pp. 104, cloth. 5s.

**Grammatography.**—A MANUAL of REFERENCE to the Alphabets of Ancient and Modern Languages. Based on the German Compilation of F. BALLHORN. In one volume, royal 8vo., pp. 80, cloth. 7s. 6d.

The "Grammatography" is offered to the public as a compendious introduction to the reading of the most important ancient and modern languages. Simple in its design, it will be consulted with advantage by the philological student, the amateur linguist, the bookseller, the corrector of the press, and the diligent compositor.

### ALPHABETICAL INDEX.

Afghan (or Pushto).	Czechian (or Bohemian).	Hebrew (Judæo-German).	Polish.
Ambaric.	Danish.	Hebrew (current hand).	Pushto (or Afghan).
Anglo-Saxon.	Demotic.	Hungarian.	Romaic (Modern Greek).
Arabic.	Estrangelo.	Illyrian.	Russian.
Arabic Ligatures.	Ethiopic.	Irish.	Runes.
Aramaic.	Etruscan.	Italian (Old).	Samaritan.
Archaic Characters.	Georgian.	Japanese.	Sanscrit.
Armenian.	German.	Javanese.	Servian.
Assyrian Cuneiform.	Glagolitic.	Lettish.	Slavonic (Old).
Bengali.	Gothic.	Mantshu.	Sorbian (or Wendish).
Bohemian (Czechian).	Greek.	Median Cuneiform.	Swedish.
Bûgis.	Greek Ligatures.	Modern Greek (Romaic).	Syriac.
Burmese.	Greek (Archaic).	Mongolian.	Tamil.
Canarese (or Carnâta).	Gujerati (or Guzerattee).	Numidian.	Telugu.
Chinese.	Hieratic.	Old Slavonic (or Cyrillic).	Tibetan.
Coptic.	Hieroglyphics.	Palmyrenian.	Turkish.
Croat-Glagolitic.	Hebrew.	Persian.	Wallachian.
Cufic.	Hebrew (Archaic).	Persian Cuneiform.	Wendish (or Sorbian).
Cyrillic (or Old Slavonic).	Hebrew (Rabbinical).	Phœnician.	Zend.

**Philological Society.**—PROPOSALS for the Publication of a NEW ENGLISH DICTIONARY. 8vo., pp. 32, sewed. 6d.

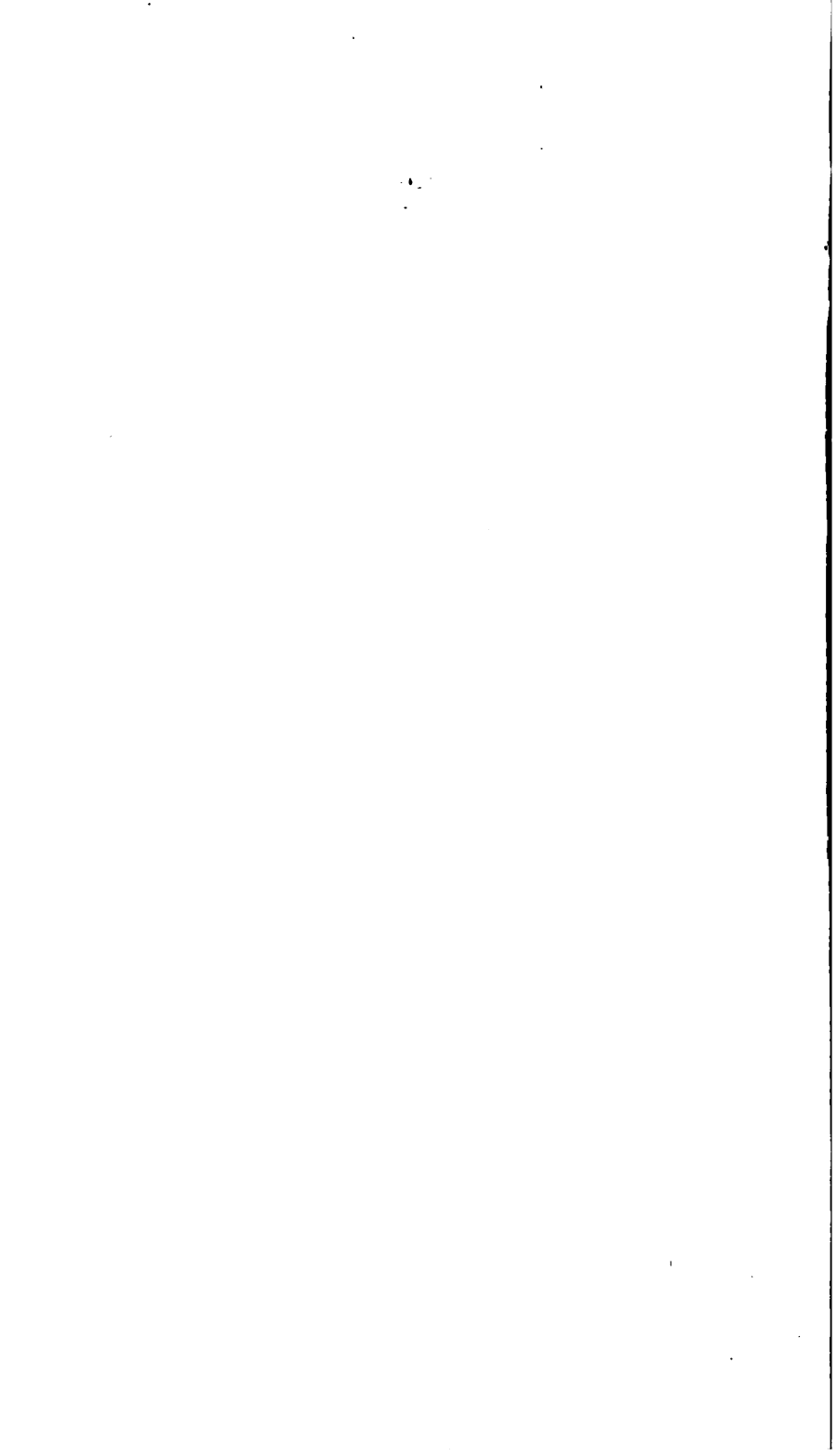
**Canones Lexicographici;** or, Rules to be observed in Editing the New English Dictionary of the Philological Society, prepared by a Committee of the Society. 8vo., pp. 12, sewed. 6d.

**Watts.**—ESSAYS ON LANGUAGE and LITERATURE. By THOMAS WATTS, of the British Museum. Reprinted, with alterations and additions, from the Transactions of the Philological Society, and elsewhere. In 1 vol. 8vo. [*In preparation.*]

**Wedgwood.**—A DICTIONARY of ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY. By HENSLEIGH WEDGWOOD, M.A., late Fellow of Ch. Coll. Cam. Vol. I. (A to D), pp. xxiv. and 508, 8vo., cloth, 14s. Vol. II. (E to P), pp. 570, cloth, 14s. Vol. III., completing the Work, in the Press.

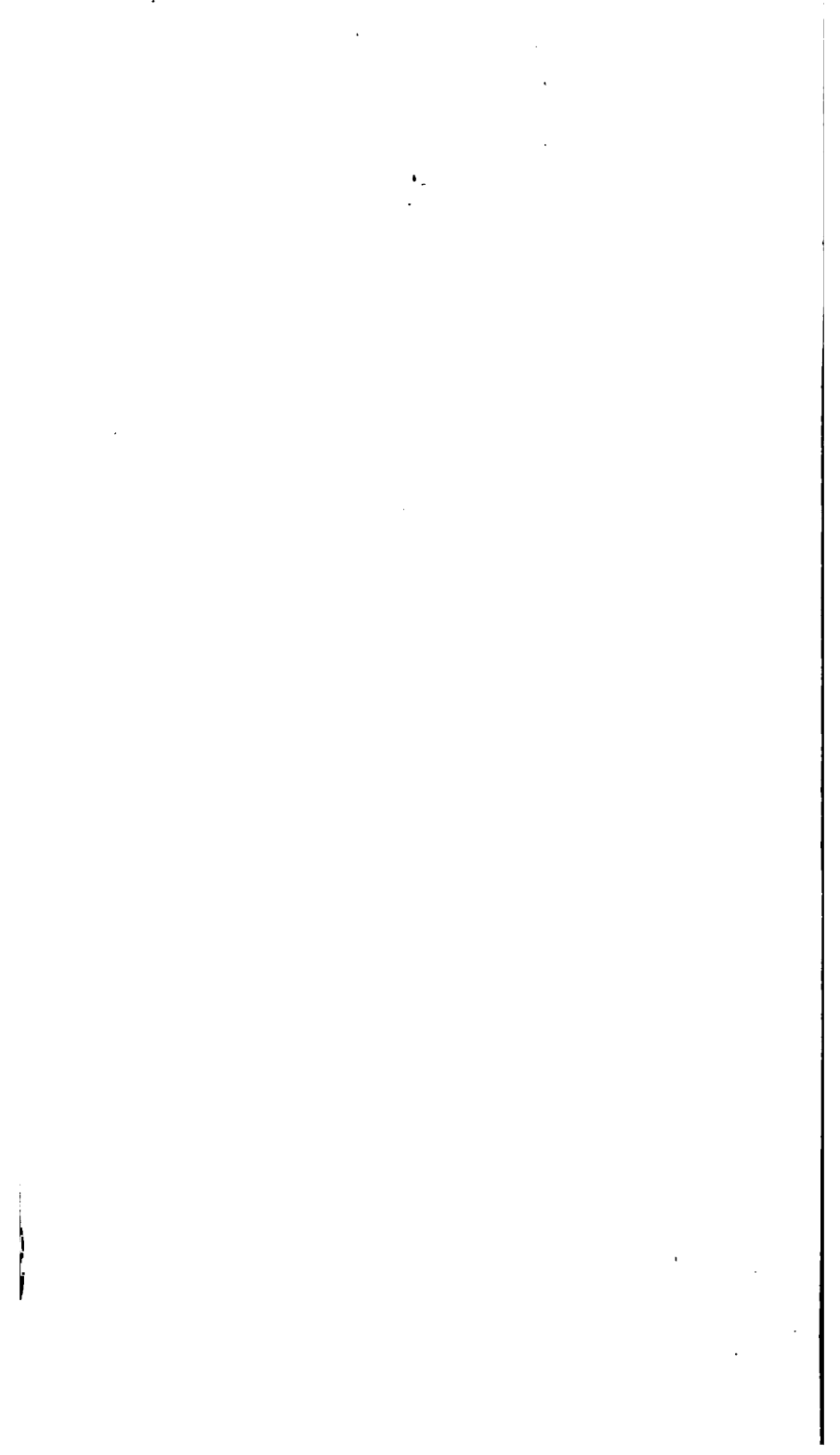
"Dictionaries are a class of books not usually esteemed light reading; but no intelligent man were to be pitied who should find himself shut up on a rainy day in a lonely house in the dreariest part of Salisbury Plain, with no other means of recreation than that which Mr. Wedgwood's Dictionary of English Etymology could afford him. He would read it through from cover to cover at a sitting, and only regret that he had not the second volume to begin upon forthwith. It is a very able book, of great research, full of delightful surprises, a repertory of the fairy tales of linguistic science."—*Spectator*.

TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON.

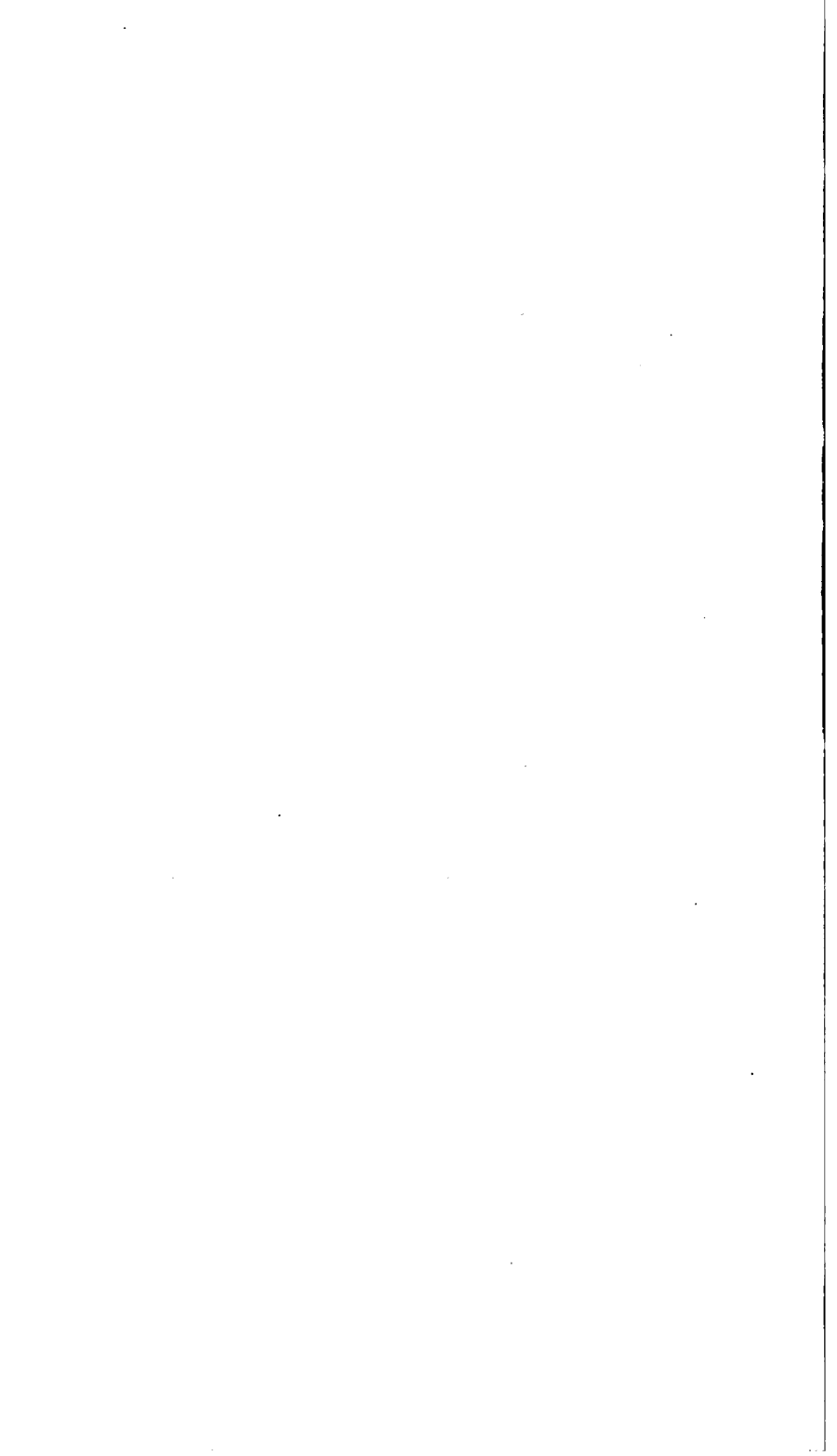






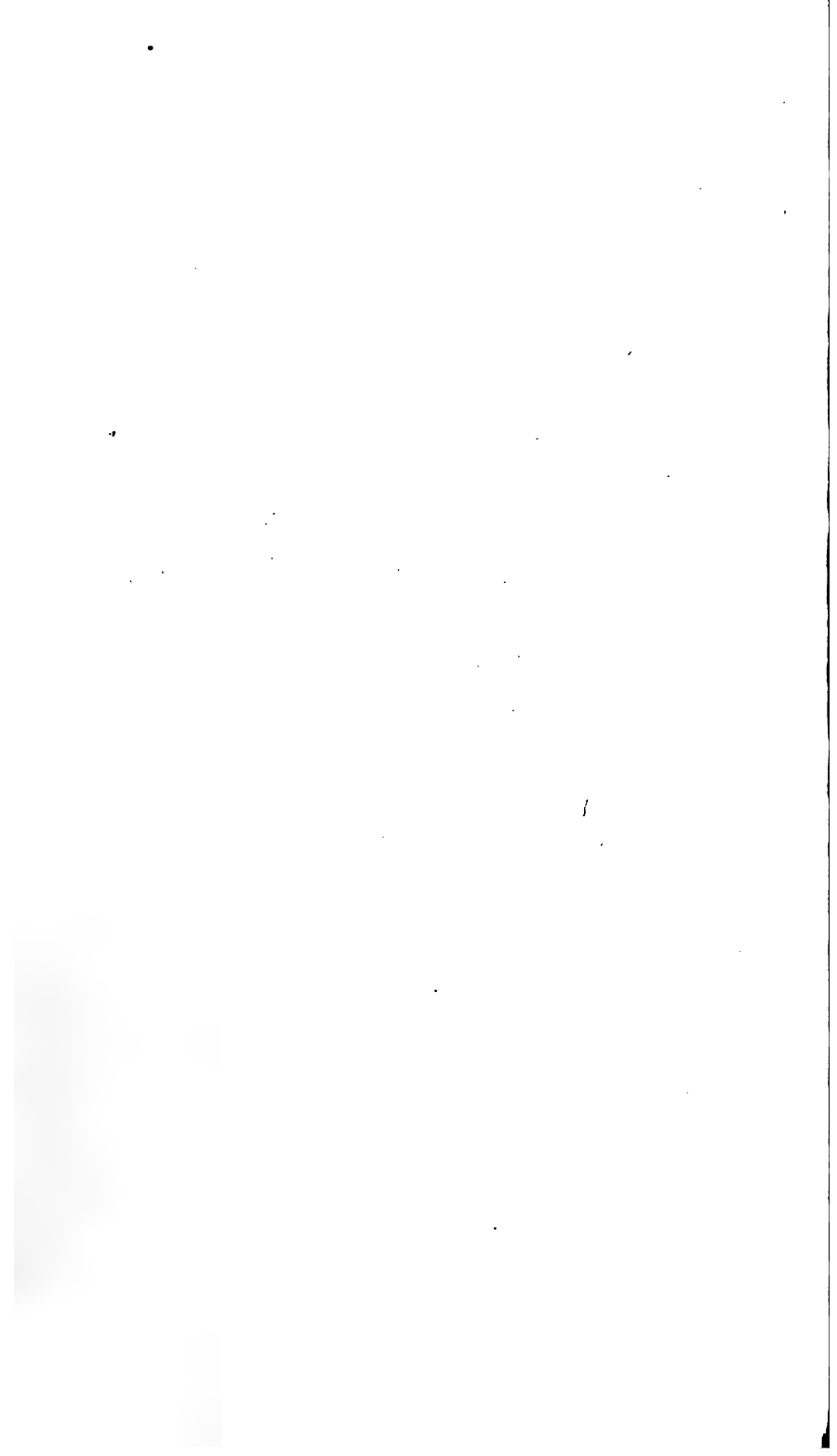






670-20817

Sir Gawayne  
and  
The Green Knight.



Gawain,  
Sir Gawayne

and

The Green Knight:

AN ALLITERATIVE ROMANCE-POEM,

(AB. 1320-30 A.D.)

BY THE AUTHOR OF  
EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS.

RE-EDITED FROM COTTON. MS. NERO, A. X., IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

BY

RICHARD MORRIS,

EDITOR OF HAMPOLE'S "PRICKE OF CONSCIENCE," "EARLY ENGLISH ALLITERATIVE POEMS," ETC.;  
MEMBER OF THE COUNCIL OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.

MDCCCLXIV.



820.6  
E12  
v. 4

YOUNG  
REPUBLICAN PARTY  
VICTORY

## PREFACE.

---

IN re-editing the present romance-poem I have been saved all labour of transcription by using the very accurate text contained in Sir F. Madden's "Syr Gawayne."

I have not only read his copy with the manuscript, but also the proof-sheets as they came to hand, hoping by this means to give the reader a text free from any errors of transcription.

The present edition differs from that of the earlier one in having the contractions of the manuscript expanded and side-notes added to the text to enable the reader to follow with some degree of ease the author's pleasant narrative of Sir Gawayne's adventures.

The Glossary is taken from Sir F. Madden's "Syr Gawayne,"<sup>1</sup> to which, for the better interpretation of the text, I have made several additions, and have, moreover, glossed nearly all the words previously left unexplained.

For a description of the Manuscript, and particulars relating to the authorship and dialect of the present work, the reader is referred to the preface to *Early English Alliterative Poems*.

R. M.

LONDON,  
December 22, 1864.

<sup>1</sup> Sir F. Madden has most generously placed at the disposal of the Early English Text Society any of his works which it may determine to re-edit.

## CORRECTIONS.

---

Page 50, l. 1583, dele the comma after *leues*.

Page 63, l. 1991, for *soundly* read *soundlyly*.

Page 78, l. 2461, for *gomen* (*sic* MS.) read *gome*.

Page 109, col. 2, l. 44 (Glossary); dele the interpretation of *Pese*, and substitute the following:—

*Pese*=*pease* (pisum); *quite pease*=‘white pease.’

“Set shallow brooks to surging seas,  
An Orient pearl to a *white pease*.”

(Puttenham, quoted by Trench—*English, Past and Present*, p. 162.)

## INTRODUCTION.

---

No Knight of the Round Table has been so highly honoured by the old Romance writers as Sir Gawayne the son of Loth, and nephew to the renowned Arthur. They delighted to describe him as Gawayne the good, a man matchless on mould, the most gracious that under God lived, the hardest of hand, the most fortunate in arms, and the most polite in hall, whose knowledge, knighthood, kindly works, doings, doughtiness, and deeds of arms were known in all lands.

When Arthur beheld the dead body of his kinsman lying on the ground bathed in blood, he is said to have exclaimed, "O righteous God, this blood were worthy to be preserved and enshrined in gold!" Our author, too, loves to speak of his hero in similar terms of praise, calling him the knight faultless in his five wits, void of every offence, and adorned with every earthly virtue. He represents him as one whose trust was in the five wounds, and in whom the five virtues which distinguished the true knight were more firmly established than in any other on earth.

The author of the present story, who, as we know from his religious poems, had an utter horror of moral impurity, could have chosen no better subject for a romance in which amusement and moral instruction were to be combined. In the following tale he shows how the true knight, though tempted

sorely not once alone, but twice, nay thrice, breaks not his vow of chastity, but turns aside the tempter's shafts with the shield of purity and arm of faith, and so passes scatheless through the perilous defile of trial and opportunity seeming safe.

✓ But while our author has borrowed many of the details of his story from the "*Roman de Perceval*" by Chrestien de Troyes, he has made the narrative more attractive by the introduction of several original and highly interesting passages which throw light on the manners and amusements of our ancestors.

The following elaborate descriptions are well deserving of especial notice:—

- I. The mode of completely arming a knight (p. 18).
- II. The hunting and breaking the deer (pp. 36-42).
- III. The hunting and unlacing the wild boar (pp. 45-50).
- IV. A fox hunt (pp. 54-61).

The following is an outline of the story of Gawayne's adventures, more or less in the words of the writer himself:—

Arthur, the greatest of Britain's kings, holds the Christmas festival at Camelot, surrounded by the celebrated knights of the Round Table, noble lords, the most renowned under heaven, and ladies the loveliest that ever had life (p. 2). This noble company celebrate the New Year by a religious service, by the bestowal of gifts, and the most joyous mirth. Lords and ladies take their seats at the table—Queen Guenever, the grey-eyed, gaily dressed, sits at the dais, the high table, or table of state, where too sat Gawayne and Ywain together with other worthies of the Round Table (p. 3). Arthur, in mood as joyful as a child, his blood young and his brain wild, declares that he will not eat nor sit long at the table until some adventurous thing, some uncouth tale, some great marvel, or some encounter of arms has occurred to mark the return of the New Year (p. 4).

The first course was announced with cracking of trumpets, with the noise of nakers and noble pipes.

"Each two had dishes twelve,  
Good beer and bright wine both."

Scarcely was the first course served when another noise than that of music was heard. There rushes in at the hall-door a knight of gigantic stature—the greatest on earth—in measure high. He was clothed

entirely in green, and rode upon a green foal (p. 5). Fair wavy hair fell about the shoulders of the Green Knight, and a great beard like a bush hung upon his breast (p. 6).

The knight carried no helmet, shield, or spear, but in one hand a holly bough, and in the other an axe "huge and unmeet," the edge of which was as keen as a sharp razor (p. 7). Thus arrayed, the Green Knight enters the hall without saluting any one. The first word that he uttered was, "Where is the governour of this gang, gladly would I see him and with himself speak reason." To the knights he cast his eye, looking for the most renowned. Much did the noble assembly marvel to see a man and a horse of such a hue, green as the grass. Even greener they seemed than green enamel on bright gold. Many marvels had they seen, but none such as this. They were afraid to answer, but sat stone still in a dead silence, as if overpowered by sleep.

"Not all from fear, but some for courtesy" (p. 8).

Then Arthur before the high dais salutes the Green Knight, bids him welcome, and entreats him to stay awhile at his Court. The knight says that his errand is not to abide in any dwelling, but to seek the most valiant of the heroes of the Round Table that he may put his courage to the proof, and thus satisfy himself as to the fame of Arthur's court. "I come," he says, "in peace, as ye may see by this branch that I bear here. Had I come with hostile intentions, I should not have left my hauberk, helmet, shield, sharp spear, and other weapons behind me. But because I desire no war, 'my weeds are softer.' If thou be so bold as all men say, thou wilt grant me the request I am about to make." "Sir courteous knight," replies Arthur, "if thou cravest battle only, here failest thou not to fight." "Nay," says the Green Knight, "I seek no fighting. Here about on this bench are only beardless children. Were I arrayed in arms, on a high steed, no man here would be a match for me (p. 9). But it is now Christmas time, and this is the New Year, and I see around me many brave ones;—if any be so bold in his blood that dare strike a stroke for another, I shall give him this rich axe to do with it whatever he pleases. I shall abide the first blow just as I sit, and will stand him a stroke, stiff on this floor, provided that I deal him another in return.

'And yet give I him respite,  
A twelvemonth and a day;  
Now haste and let see tite (soon)  
Dare any here-in ought say.'

If he astounded them at first, much more so did he after this speech, and fear held them all silent. The knight, righting himself in his saddle, rolls fiercely his red eyes about, bends his bristly green brows, and strokes his beard awaiting a reply. But finding none that would carp with him, he exclaims, "What! is this Arthur's house, the fame of which has spread through so many realms? Forsooth, the renown of the Round Table is overturned by the word of one man's speech, for



all tremble for dread without a blow being struck!" (p. 10). With this he laughed so loud that Arthur blushed for very shame, and waxed as wroth as the wind. "I know no man," he says, "that is aghast at thy great words. Give me now thy axe and I will grant thee thy request!" Arthur seizes the axe, grasps the handle, and sternly brandishes it about, while the Green Knight, with a stern cheer and a dry countenance, stroking his beard and drawing down his coat, awaits the blow (p. 11). Sir Gawayne, the nephew of the king, beseeches his uncle to let him undertake the encounter; and, at the earnest entreaty of his nobles, Arthur consents "to give Gawayne the game" (p. 12).

Sir Gawayne then takes possession of the axe, but, before the blow is dealt, the Green Knight asks the name of his opponent. "In good faith," answers the good knight, "Gawayne I am called, that bids thee to this buffet, whatever may befall after, and at this time twelvemonth will take from thee another, with whatever weapon thou wilt, and with no wight else alive." "By Gog," quoth the Green Knight, "it pleases me well that I shall receive at thy fist that which I have sought here—moreover thou hast truly rehearsed the terms of the covenant,—but thou shalt first pledge me thy word that thou wilt seek me thyself, wheresoever on earth thou believest I may be found, and fetch thee such wages as thou dealest me to-day before this company of doughty ones." "Where should I seek thee?" replies Gawayne, "where is thy place? I know not thee, thy court, or thy name. I wot not where thou dwellest, but teach me thereto, tell me how thou art called, and I shall endeavour to find thee,—and that I swear thee for truth and by my sure troth." "That is enough in New Year," says the groom in green, "if I tell thee when I have received the tap. When thou hast smitten me, then smartly I will teach thee of my house, my home, and my own name, so that thou mayest follow my track and fulfil the covenant between us. If I spend no speech, then speedest thou the better, for then mayest thou remain in thy own land and seek no further; but cease thy talking" (p. 13). Take now thy grim tool to thee and let us see how thou knockest." "Gladly, sir, for sooth," quoth Gawayne, and his axe he brandishes.

The Green Knight adjusts himself on the ground, bends slightly his head, lays his long lovely locks over his crown, and lays bare his neck for the blow. Gawayne then gripped the axe, and, raising it on high, let it fall quickly upon the knight's neck and severed the head from the body. The fair head fell from the neck to the earth, and many turned it aside with their feet as it rolled forth. The blood burst from the body, yet the knight never faltered nor fell; but boldly he started forth on stiff shanks and fiercely rushed forward, seized his head, and lifted it up quickly. Then he runs to his horse, the bridle he catches, steps into his saddle and strides aloft. His head by the hair he holds in his hands, and sits as firmly in his saddle as if no mishap had ailed

<sup>1</sup> This, I think, is the true explanation of *stokes*.

him, though headless he was (p. 14). He turned his ugly trunk about—that ugly body that bled,—and holding the head in his hand, he directed the face toward the “dearest on the dais.” The head lifted up its eyelids and looked abroad, and thus much spoke with its mouth as ye may now hear:—

“Loke, Gawayne, thou be prompt to go as thou hast promised, and seek till thou find me according to thy promise made in the hearing of these knights. Get thee to the Green Chapel, I charge thee, to fetch such a dint as thou hast dealt, to be returned on New Year’s morn. As the Knight of the Green Chapel I am known to many, wherefore if thou seekest thou canst not fail to find me. Therefore come, or recreant be called.” With a fierce start the reins he turns, rushes out of the hall-door, his head in his hand, so that the fire of the flint flew from the hoofs of his foal. To what kingdom he belonged knew none there, nor knew they from whence he had come. What then?

“The king and Gawayne there

At that green (one) they laugh and grin.”

Though Arthur wondered much at the marvel, he let no one see that he was at all troubled about it, but full loudly thus spake to his comely queen with courteous speech:

“Dear dame, to-day be never dismayed, well happens such craft at Christmas time. I may now proceed to meat, for I cannot deny that I have witnessed a wondrous adventure this day” (p. 15).

He looked upon Sir Gawayne and said, “Now sir, hang up thine axe, for enough has it hewn.” So the weapon was hung up on high that all might look upon it, and “by true title thereof tell the wonder.” Then all the knights hastened to their seats at the table, so did the king and our good knight, and they were there served with all dainties, “with all manner of meat and minstrelsy.”

Though words were wanting when they first to seat went, now are their hands full of stern work, and the marvel affords them good subject for conversation. But a year passes full quickly and never returns,—the beginning is seldom like the end; wherefore this Christmas passed away and the year after, and each season in turn followed after another (p. 16). Thus winter winds round again, and then Gawayne thinks of his wearisome journey (p. 17). On All-hallows day Arthur entertains right nobly the lords and ladies of his court in honour of his nephew, for whom all courteous knights and lovely ladies were in great grief. Nevertheless they spoke only of mirth, and, though joyless themselves, made many a joke to cheer the good Sir Gawayne (p. 18). Early on the morrow Sir Gawayne, with great ceremony, is arrayed in his armour (p. 19), and thus completely equipped for his adventure he first hears mass, and afterwards takes leave of Arthur, the knights of the Round Table, and the lords and ladies of the court, who kiss him and commend him to Christ. He bids them all good day, as he thought, for evermore (p. 21);

*“Very much was the warm water that poured from eyes that day.”*

Now rides our knight through the realms of England with no companion but his foal, and no one to hold converse with save God alone. From Camelot, in Somersetshire, he proceeds through Gloucestershire and the adjoining counties into Montgomeryshire, and thence through North Wales to Holyhead, adjoining the Isle of Anglesea (p. 22), from which he passes into the very narrow peninsula of Wirral, in Cheshire, where dwelt but few that loved God or man. Gawayne enquires after the Green Knight of the Green Chapel, but all the inhabitants declare that they had never seen "any man of such hues of green."

The knight thence pursues his journey by strange paths, over hill and moor, encountering on his way not only serpents, wolves, bulls, bears, and boars, but wood satyrs and giants. But worse than all these, however, was the sharp winter, "when the cold clear water shed from the clouds, and froze ere it might fall to the earth. Nearly slain with the sleet he slept in his armour, more nights than enough, in naked rocks" (p. 23).

Thus in peril and plight the knight travels on until Christmas-eve, and to Mary he makes his moan that she may direct him to some abode. On the morn he arrives at an immense forest, wondrously wild, surrounded by high hills on every side, where he found hoary oaks full huge, a hundred together. The hazel and the hawthorn intermingled were all overgrown with moss, and upon their boughs sat many sad birds that piteously piped for pain of the cold. Gawayne besought the Lord and Mary to guide him to some habitation where he might hear mass (p. 24). Scarcely had he crossed himself thrice, when he perceived a dwelling in the wood set upon a hill. It was the loveliest castle he had ever beheld. It was pitched on a prairie, with a park all about it, enclosing many a tree for more than two miles. It shone as the sun through the bright oaks (p. 25).

Gawayne urges on his steed Gringolet, and finds himself at the "chief gate." He called aloud, and soon there appeared a "porter" on the wall, who demanded his errand.

"Good sir," quoth Gawayne, "wouldst thou go to the high lord of this house, and crave a lodging for me?"

"Yea, by Peter!" replied the porter, "well I know that thou art welcome to dwell here as long as thou likest."

The drawbridge is soon let down, and the gates opened wide to receive the knight. Many noble ones hasten to bid him welcome (p. 26). They take away his helmet, sword, and shield, and many a proud one presses forward to do him honour. They bring him into the hall, where a fire was brightly burning upon the hearth. Then the lord of the land<sup>1</sup> comes from his chamber and welcomes Sir Gawayne, telling him that he is to consider the place as his own. Our knight is next

<sup>1</sup> Gawayne is now in the castle of the Green Knight, who, divested of his elvish or supernatural character, appears to our knight merely as a bold one with a beaver-hued beard.

conducted to a bright bower, where was noble bedding—curtains of pure silk, with golden hems, and Tarsic tapestries upon the walls and the floors (p. 27). Here the knight doffed his armour and put on rich robes, which so well became him, that all declared that a more comely knight Christ had never made (p. 28).

A table is soon raised, and Gawayne, having washed, proceeds to meat. Many dishes are set before him—"sews" of various kinds, fish of all kinds, some baked in bread, others broiled on the embers, some boiled, and others seasoned with spices. The knight expresses himself well pleased, and calls it a most noble and princely feast.

After dinner he, in reply to numerous questions, tells his host that he is Gawayne, one of the Knights of the Round Table. When this was made known great was the joy in the hall. Each one said softly to his companion, "Now we shall see courteous behaviour and learn the terms of noble discourse, since we have amongst us 'that fine father of nurture.' Truly God has highly favoured us in sending us such a noble guest as Sir Gawayne" (p. 29). At the end of the Christmas festival Gawayne desires to take his departure from the castle, but his host persuades him to stay, promising to direct him to the Green Chapel (about two miles from the chapel), that he may be there by the appointed time (p. 34).

~~A covenant is made between them, the terms of which were that the~~ lord of the castle should go out early to the chase, that Gawayne meanwhile should lie in his loft at his ease, then rise at his usual hour, and afterwards sit at table with his hostess, and that at the end of the day they should make an exchange of whatever they might obtain in the interim. "Whatever I win in the wood," says the lord, "shall be yours, and what thou gettest shall be mine" (p. 35).

Full early before daybreak the folk uprise, saddle their horses, and tress their mails. The noble lord of the land, arrayed for riding, eats hastily a sop, and having heard mass, proceeds with a hundred hunters to hunt the wild deer (p. 36).

All this time Gawayne lies in his gay bed. His nap is disturbed by a little noise at the door, which is softly opened. He heaves up his head out of the clothes, and, peeping through the curtains, beholds a most lovely lady (the wife of his host). She came towards the bed, and the knight laid himself down quickly, pretending to be asleep. The lady stole to the bed, cast up the curtains, crept within, sat her softly on the bed-side, and waited some time till the knight should awake. After lurking awhile under the clothes considering what it all meant, Gawayne unlocked his eyelids, and put on a look of surprise, at the same time making the sign of the cross, as if afraid of some hidden danger (p. 38). "Good morrow, sir," said that fair lady, "ye are a careless sleeper to let one enter thus. I shall bind you in your bed, of that be ye sure." "Good morrow," quoth Gawayne, "I shall act according to your will with great pleasure, but permit me to rise that I may the more comfortably converse with you." "Nay, beau sir," said that

sweet one, "ye shall not rise from your bed, for since I have caught my knight I shall hold talk with him. I ween well that ye are Sir Gawayne that all the world worships, whose honour and courtesy are so greatly praised. Now ye are here, and we are alone (my lord and his men being afar off, other men, too, are in bed, so are my maidens), and the door is safely closed, I shall use my time well while it lasts. Ye are welcome to my person to do with it as ye please, and I will be your servant" (p. 39).

Gawayne behaves most discreetly, for the remembrance of his forthcoming adventure at the Green Chapel prevents him from thinking of love (p. 41). At last the lady takes leave of the knight by catching him in her arms and kissing him (p. 41). The day passes away merrily, and at dusk the lord of the castle returns from the chase. He presents the venison to Gawayne according to the previous covenant between them. Our knight gives his host a kiss as the only piece of good fortune that had fallen to him during the day. "It is good," says the other, "and would be much better if ye would tell me where ye won such bliss" (p. 44). "That was not in our covenant," replies Gawayne, "so try me no more." After much laughing on both sides they proceed to supper, and afterwards, while the choice wine is being carried round, Gawayne and his host renew their agreement. Late at night they take leave of each other and hasten to their beds. "By the time that the cock had crowed and cackled thrice" the lord was up, and after "meat and mass" were over the hunters make for the woods, where they give chase to a wild boar who had grown old and mischievous (p. 45).

While the sportsmen are hunting this "wild swine" our lovely knight lies in his bed. He is not forgotten by the lady, who pays him an early visit, seeking to make further trial of his virtues. She sits softly by his side and tells him that he has forgotten what she taught him the day before (p. 47). "I taught you of kissing," says she; "that becomes every courteous knight." Gawayne says that he must not take that which is forbidden him. The lady replies that he is strong enough to enforce his own wishes. Our knight answers that every gift not given with a good will is worthless. His fair visitor then enquires how it is that he who is so skilled in the true sport of love and so renowned a knight, has never talked to her of love (p. 48). "You ought," she says, "to show and teach a young thing like me some tokens of true-love's crafts; I come hither and sit here alone to learn of you some game; do teach me of your wit while my lord is from home." Gawayne replies that he cannot undertake the task of expounding true-love and tales of arms to one who has far more wisdom than he possesses. Thus did our knight avoid all appearance of evil, though sorely pressed to do what was wrong (p. 49). The lady, having bestowed two kisses upon Sir Gawayne, takes her leave of him (p. 50).

At the end of the day the lord of the castle returns home with the shields and head of the wild boar. He shows them to his guest, who declares that "such a brawn of a beast, nor such sides of a swine," he

never before has seen. Gawayne takes possession of the spoil according to covenant, and in return he bestows two kisses upon his host, who declares that his guest has indeed been rich with "such chaffer" (p. 52).

After much persuasion, Gawayne consents to stop at the castle another day (p. 53). Early on the morrow the lord and his men hasten to the woods, and come upon the track of a fox, the hunting of which affords them plenty of employment and sport (p. 54). Meanwhile our good knight sleeps soundly within his comely curtains. He is again visited by the lady of the castle. So gaily was she attired, and so "faultless of her features," that great joy warmed the heart of Sir Gawayne. With soft and pleasant smiles "they smite into mirth," and are soon engaged in conversation. Had not Mary thought of her knight, he would have been in great peril (p. 56). So sorely does the fair one press him with her love, that he fears lest he should become a traitor to his host. The lady enquires whether he has a mistress to whom he has plighted his troth. The knight swears by St. John that he neither has nor desires one. This answer causes the dame to sigh for sorrow, and telling him that she must depart, she asks for some gift, if it were only a glove, by which she might "think on the knight and lessen her grief" (p. 57). Gawayne assures her that he has nothing worthy of her acceptance; that he is on an "uncouth errand," and therefore has "no men with no mails containing precious things," for which he is truly sorry.

Quoth that lovesome (one)—

"Though I had nought of yours,  
Yet should ye have of mine."

Thus saying, she offers him a rich ring of red gold "with a shining stone standing aloft," that shone like the beams of the bright sun. The knight refused the gift, as he had nothing to give in return. "Since ye refuse my ring," says the lady, "because it seems too rich, and ye would not be beholden to me, I shall give you my girdle that is less valuable" (p. 58). But Gawayne replies that he will not accept gold or a reward of any kind, though "ever in hot and in cold" he will be her true servant.

"Do you refuse it," asks the lady, "because it seems simple and of little value? Whoso knew the virtues that are knit therein would estimate it more highly. For he who is girded with this green lace cannot be wounded or slain by any man under heaven." The knight thinks awhile, and it strikes him that this would be "jewel for the jeopardy" that he had to undergo at the Green Chapel. So he not only accepts the lace, but promises to keep the possession of it a secret (p. 59). By that time the lady had kissed him thrice, and she then takes "her leave and leaves him there."

Gawayne rises, dresses himself in noble array, and conceals the "love lace" where he might find it again. He then hies to mass, shrives him of his misdeeds, and obtains absolution. On his return to the hall he solaces the ladies with comely carols and all kinds of joy (p. 60). The dark night came, and then the lord of the castle, having slain the



fox, returns to his "dear home," where he finds a fire brightly burning and his guest amusing the ladies (p. 61). Gawayne, in fulfilment of his agreement, kisses his host thrice.<sup>1</sup> "By Christ," quoth the other knight, "ye have caught much bliss.. I have hunted all this day and nought have I got but the skin of this foul fox (the devil have the goods), and that is full poor for to pay for such precious things" (p. 62).

After the usual evening's entertainment, Gawayne retires to rest. The next morning, being New Year's day, is cold and stormy. Snow falls, and the dales are full of drift. Our knight in his bed locks his eyelids, but full little he sleeps. By each cock that crows he knows the hour, and before day-break he calls for his chamberlain, who quickly brings him his armour (p. 64). While Gawayne clothed himself in his rich weeds he forgot not the "lace, the lady's gift," but with it doubly girded his loins. He wore it not for its rich ornaments, "but to save himself when it behoved him to suffer," and as a safeguard against sword or knife (p. 65).

Having thanked his host and all the renowned assembly for the great kindness he had experienced at their hands, "he steps into stirrups and strides aloft" (p. 66).

The drawbridge is let down, and the broad gates unbarred and borne open upon both sides, and the knight, after commending the castle to Christ, passes thereout and goes on his way accompanied by his guide, that should teach him to turn to that place where he should receive the much dreaded blow. They climb over cliffs, where each hill had a hat and a mist-cloak, until the next morn, when they find themselves on a full high hill covered with snow. The servant bids his master remain awhile, saying, "I have brought you hither at this time, and now ye are not far from that noted place that ye have so often enquired after. The place that ye press to is esteemed full perilous, and there dwells a man in that waste the worst upon earth, for he is stiff and stern and loves to strike, and greater is he than any man upon middle-earth, and his body is bigger than the best four in Arthur's house. He keeps the Green Chapel; there passes none by that place, however proud in arms, that he does not 'ding him to death with dint of his hand.' He is a man immoderate and 'no mercy uses,' for be it churl or chaplain that by the chapel rides, monk or mass-priest, or any man else, it is as pleasant to him to kill them as to go alive himself. Wherefore I tell thee truly, 'come ye there, ye be killed, though ye had twenty lives to spend. He has dwelt there long of yore, and on field much sorrow has wrought. Again his dints sore ye may not defend you' (p. 67). Therefore, good Sir Gawayne, let the man alone, and for God's sake go by some other path, and then I shall hie me home again. I swear to you by God and all His saints that I will never say that ever ye attempted to flee from any man."

Gawayne thanks his guide for his well-meant kindness, but declares

<sup>1</sup> He only in part keeps to his covenant, as he holds back the *love-lace*.

that to the Green Chapel he will go, though the owner thereof be "a stern knave," for God can devise means to save his servants.

"Mary!" quoth the other, "since it pleases thee to lose thy life, I will not hinder thee. Have thy helmet on thy head, thy spear in thy hand, and ride down this path by yon rock-side, till thou be brought to the bottom of the valley. Then look a little on the plain, on thy left hand, and thou shalt see in that slade the chapel itself, and the burly knight that guards it (p. 68). Now, farewell Gawayne the noble! for all the gold upon ground I would not go with thee nor bear thee fellowship through this wood 'on foot farther.'" Thus having spoken, he gallops away and leaves the knight alone.

Gawayne now pursues his journey, rides through the dale, and looks about. He sees no signs of a resting-place, but only high and steep banks, and the very shadows of the high woods seemed wild and distorted. No chapel, however, could he discover. After a while he sees a round hill by the side of a stream; thither he goes, alights, and fastens his horse to the branch of a tree. He walks about the hill, debating with himself what it might be. It had a hole in the one end and on each side, and everywhere overgrown with grass, but whether it was only an old cave or a crevice of an old crag he could not tell (p. 69).

"Now, indeed," quoth Gawayne, "a desert is here; this oratory is ugly with herbs overgrown. It is a fitting place for the man in green to 'deal here his devotions after the devil's manner.' Now I feel it is the fiend (the devil) in my five wits that has covenanted with me that he may destroy me. This is a chapel of misfortune—evil betide it! It is the most cursed kirk that ever I came in." With his helmet on his head, and spear in his hand, he roams up to the rock, and then he hears from that high hill beyond the brook a wondrous wild noise. Lo! it clattered in the cliff as if one upon a grindstone were grinding a scythe. It whirled like the water at a mill, and rushed and re-echoed, terrible to hear. "Though my life I forego," says Gawayne, "no noise shall cause me to fear."

Then he cried aloud, "Who dwells in this place, discourse with me to hold? For now is good Gawayne going right here if any brave wight will hie him hither, either now or never" (p. 70).

"Abide," quoth one on the bank above, over his head, "and thou shalt have all in haste that I promised thee once."

Soon there comes out of a hole in the crag, with a fell weapon, a Danish axe quite new, the "man in the green," clothed as at first as to his legs, locks, and beard. But now he is on foot and walks on the earth. When he reaches the stream, he hops over and boldly strides about. He meets Sir Gawayne, who tells him that he is quite ready to fulfil his part of the compact. "Gawayne," quoth that 'green gome' (man), "may God preserve thee! Truly thou art welcome to my place, 'and thou hast timed thy travel' as a true man should. Thou knowest the covenants made between us, at this time twelve-

month, that on New Year's day I should return thee thy blow. We are now in this valley by ourselves, and can do as we please (p. 71). Have, therefore, thy helmet off thy head, and 'have here thy pay.' Let us have no more talk than when thou didst strike off my head with a single blow."

"Nay, by God!" quoth Gawayne, "I shall not begrudge thee thy will for any harm that may happen, but will stand still while thou strikest."

Then he stoops a little and shows his bare neck, unmoved by any fear. The Green Knight takes up his "grim tool," and with all his force raises it aloft, as if he meant utterly to destroy him. As the axe came gliding down Gawayne "shrank a little with the shoulders from the sharp iron." The other withheld his weapon, and then reproved the prince with many proud words. "Thou art not Gawayne that is so good esteemed, that never feared for no host by hill nor by vale, for now thou fleest for fear before thou feelest harm (p. 72). Such cowardice of that knight did I never hear. I never flinched nor fled when thou didst aim at me in King Arthur's house. My head flew to my feet and yet I never fled, wherefore I deserve to be called the better man."

Quoth Gawayne, "I shunted once, but will do so no more, though my head fall on the stones. But hasten and bring me to the point; deal me my destiny, and do it out of hand, for I shall stand thee a stroke and start no more until thine axe has hit me—have here my troth." "Have at thee, then," said the other, and heaves the axe aloft, and looks as savagely as if he were mad. He aims at the other mightily, but withholds his hand ere it might hurt. Gawayne readily abides the blow without flinching with any member, and stood still as a stone or a tree fixed in rocky ground with a hundred roots.

Then merrily the other did speak, "Since now thou hast thy heart whole it behoves me to strike, so take care of thy neck." Gawayne answers with great wrath, "Thrash on, thou fierce man; thou threatenest too long; I believe thy own heart fails thee."

"Forsooth," quoth the other, since thou speakest so boldly, I will no longer delay" (p. 73). Then, contracting "both lips and brow," he made ready to strike, and let fall his axe on the bare neck of Sir Gawayne. "Though he hammered" fiercely, he only "severed the hide," causing the blood to flow. When Gawayne saw his blood on the snow, he quickly seized his helmet and placed it on his head. Then he drew out his bright sword, and thus angrily spoke: "Cease, man, of thy blow, bid me no more. I have received a stroke in this place without opposition, but if thou givest me any more readily shall I requite thee, of that be thou sure. Our covenant stipulates one stroke, and therefore now cease."

The Green Knight, resting on his axe, looks on Sir Gawayne, as bold and fearless he there stood, and then with a loud voice thus addresses the knight: "Bold knight, be not so wroth, no man here has wronged thee (p. 74); I promised thee a stroke, and thou hast it, so hold

thee well pleased. I could have dealt much worse with thee, and caused thee much sorrow. Two blows I aimed at thee, for twice thou kissedst my fair wife; but I struck thee not, because thou restoredst them to me according to agreement. At the third time thou failedst, and therefore I have given thee that tap. That woven girdle, given thee by my own wife, belongs to me. I know well thy kisses, thy conduct also, and the wooing of my wife, for I wrought it myself. I sent her to try thee, and truly methinks thou art the most faultless man that ever on foot went. Still, sir, thou wert wanting in good faith; but as it proceeded from no immorality, thou being only desirous of saving thy life, the less I blame thee."

Gawayne stood confounded, the blood rushed into his face, and he shrank within himself for very shame. "Cursed," he cried, "be cowardice and covetousness both; in you are villany and vice, that virtue destroy." Then he takes off the girdle and throws it to the knight in green, cursing his cowardice and covetousness. The Green Knight, laughing, thus spoke: "Thou hast confessed so clean, and acknowledged thy faults, that I hold thee as pure as thou hadst never forfeited since thou wast first born. I give thee, sir, the gold-hemmed girdle as a token of thy adventure at the Green Chapel. Come now to my castle, and we shall enjoy together the festivities of the New Year" (p. 76).

"Nay, forsooth," quoth the knight, "but for your kindness may God requite you. Commend me to that courteous one your comely wife, who with her crafts has beguiled me. But it is no uncommon thing for a man to come to sorrow through women's wiles; for so was Adam beguiled with one, and Solomon with many. Samson was destroyed by Delilah, and David suffered much through Bathsheba. *'It were indeed great bliss for a man to love them well and believe them not.'* Since the greatest upon earth were so beguiled, methinks I should be excused. But God reward you for your girdle, which I will ever wear in remembrance of my fault, and when pride shall exalt me, a look to this love-lace shall lessen it (p. 77). But since ye are the lord of yonder land, from whom I have received so much honour, tell me truly your right name, and I shall ask no more questions."

Quoth the other, "I am called Bernlak de Hautdesert, through might of Morgain la Fay, who dwells in my house. Much has she learnt of Merlin, who knows all your knights at home. She brought me to your hall for to essay the prowess of the Round Table. She wrought this wonder to bereave you of your wits, hoping to have grieved Guenever and affrighted her to death by means of the man that spoke with his head in his hand before the high table. She is even thine aunt, Arthur's half sister; wherefore come to thine aunt, for all my household love thee."

Gawayne refuses to accompany the Green Knight, and so, with many embraces and kind wishes, they separate—the one to his castle, the other to Arthur's court.

After passing through many wild ways, our knight recovers from the wound in his neck, and at last comes safe and sound to the court of King Arthur. Great then was the joy of all; the king and queen kiss their brave knight, and make many enquiries about his journey. He tells them of his adventures, hiding nothing—"the chance of the chapel, the cheer of the knight, the love of the lady, and lastly of the lace." Groaning for grief and shame he shows them the cut in his neck, which he had received for his unfaithfulness (p. 79). The king and his courtiers comfort the knight—they laugh loudly at his adventures, and unanimously agree that those lords and ladies that belonged to the Round Table, and each knight of the brotherhood, should ever after wear a bright green belt for Gawayne's sake. And he upon whom it was conferred honoured it evermore after.

Thus in Arthur's time this adventure befell, whereof the "*Brutus Books*" bear witness (p. 80).

I need not say that the *Brutus Books* we possess do not contain the legend here set forth, though it is not much more improbable than some of the statements contained in them. If the reader desires to know the relation in which this and the like stories stand to the original Arthur legends, he will find it discussed in Sir F. Madden's Preface to his edition of "*Syr Gawayne*," which also contains a sketch of the very different views taken of Sir Gawayne by the different Romance writers.

Into this and other *literary* questions I do not enter here, as I have nothing to add to Sir F. Madden's statements; but in the text of the Poem I have differed from him in some few readings, which will be found noticed in the Notes and Glossary.

As the manuscript is fast fading, I am glad that the existence of the Early English Text Society has enabled us to secure a wider diffusion of its contents before the original shall be no longer legible.

We want nothing but an increased supply of members to enable us to give to a large circle of readers many an equally interesting record of Early English minds.

# SYR GAWAYN AND THE GRENE KNYȝT.

## [FYTTE THE FIRST.]

### I.

- S**IPEN þe sege & þe assaut wat; sesed at Troye,  
þe borȝ brittened & brent to brondeȝ & askeȝ,  
þe tulk þat þe trammes of tresoun þer wroȝt,  
4 Wat; tried for his tricherie, þe trewest on erthe;  
Hit wat; Ennias þe athel, & his highȝ kynde,  
þat sipen depreeded prouinces, & patrounes biȝome —  
Welneȝe of al þe wele in þe west iles,  
8 Fro riche Romulus to Rome ricchis hym swyȝe,  
With gret bobbaunce þat burȝe he biges vpon fyrst,  
& neuenes hit his aune nome, as hit now hat;  
Ticius to Tuskan [turnes,] & teldes bigynnes;  
12 Langaberde in Lumbardie lyftes vp homes;  
& fer ouȝer þe French flod Felix Brutus  
On mony bonkkes ful brode Bretayn he setteȝ,  
wyth wyne;  
16 Where werre, & wrake, & wonder,  
Bi syȝe; hatȝ wont þer-inne,  
& oft boȝe blysse & blunder  
Ful skete hatȝ skyfted synne.

[Fol. 91a.]  
After the siege of  
Troy

Romulus built  
Rome,

and Felix Brutus  
founded Britain,

a land of war and  
wonder,

and oft of bliss  
and blunder.

### II.

- 20 Ande quen þis Bretayn watȝ bigged bi þis burn rych,  
Bolde bredden þer-inne, baret þat lofden,  
In mony turned tyme tene þat wroȝten;  
Mo ferlyes on þis folde han fallen here oft

Bold men in-  
creased in the  
land,

and many marvels happened.

Of all Britain's kings Arthur was the noblest.

[Fol. 91b.]

Listen a while and ye shall hear the story of an "outrageous adventure."

- 24 þen in any oþer þat I wot, syn þat ilk tyme.  
 Bot of alle þat here bult of Bretaygne kynges  
 Ay wat; Arthur þe hendest, as I haf herde telle;  
 For-þi an aunter in erde I attle to schawe,  
 28 þat a selly in siȝt summe men hit holden,  
 & an outrage awenture of Arthure; wondere; ;  
 If þe wyl lysten þis laye bot on littel quile,  
 I schal telle hit, as-tit, as I in toun herde,  
 32 with tonge;  
 As hit is stad & stoken,  
 In stori stif & stronge,  
 With lel letteres loken,  
 36 In londe so hat; ben longe.

### III.

Arthur held at Camelot his Christmas feast,

with all the knights of the Round Table,

full fifteen days.

All was joy in hall and chamber,

among brave knights and lovely ladies,

the happiest under heaven.

- þis kyng lay at Camylot vpon kryst-masse,  
 With mony luflych lorde, lede; of þe best,  
 Rekenly of þe rounde table alle þo rich breþer,  
 40 With ryche reuel oryȝt, & rechles merþes;  
 þer tournayed tulkes bi-tyme; ful mony,  
 Iusted ful Iolilé þise gentyle knyȝtes,  
 Syþen kayred to þe court, caroles to make.  
 44 For þer þe fest wat; ilyche ful fifteen dayes,  
 With alle þe mete & þe mirþe þat men couþe a-vyse;  
 Such glaumande gle glorious to here,  
 Dere dyn vp-on day, daunsyng on nyȝtes,  
 48 Al wat; hap vpon heȝe in halle; & chambre;  
 With lorde; & ladies, as leuest him þoȝt;  
 With all þe wele of þe worlde þay woned þer samen,  
 þe most kyd knyȝte; vnder krystes seluen,  
 52 & þe louelokkest ladies þat euer lif haden,  
 & he þe comlokest kyng þat þe court halde; ;  
 For al wat; þis fayre folk in her first age,  
 on sille;  
 56 þe hapnest vnder heuen,  
 Kyng hyȝest mon of wylle,

Hit were<sup>1</sup> now gret nye to neuen  
So hardy a here on hille.

## IV.

60 Wyle nw ȝer wat; so ȝep þat hit wat; nwe cummen,  
þat day double on þe ðece wat; þe douth serued,  
Fro þe kyng wat; cummen with knyȝtes in to þe halle,  
þe chauntre of þe chapel cheued to an ende;

They celebrate  
the New Year  
with great joy.

64 Loude crye wat; þer kest of clerke; & oþer,  
Nowel nayted o-newe, neuened ful ofte;  
& syþen riche forth runnen to reche honde-selle,  
ȝeȝed ȝeres ȝiftes on hiȝ, ȝelde hem bi hond,

[Fol. 92.]

68 Debated busyly aboute þo giftes;  
Ladies laȝed ful loude, þoȝ þay lost haden,  
& he þat wan wat; not wroþe, þat may ȝe wel trawe.  
Alle þis mirþe þay maden to þe mete tyme;

Gifts are de-  
manded and be-  
stowed.

72 When þay had waschen, worþyly þay wenten to sete,  
þe best burne ay abof, as hit best semed;  
Whene Guenore ful gay, grayþed in þe myddes,  
Dressed on þe dere des, dubbed al aboute,

Lords and ladies  
take their seats  
at the table.

76 Smal sendal bisides, a selure hir ouer  
Of tryed Tolouse, of Tars tapites in-noghe,  
þat were enbrawdred & beten wyth þe best gemmes,  
þat myȝt be pfeued of prys wyth penyës to bye,

Queen Guenever  
appears gaily  
dressed.

80 in daye;  
þe comlokest to discrye,  
þer glent with yȝen gray,  
A semloker þat euer he syȝe,  
84 Soth moȝt no mon say.

A lady fairer of  
form might no  
one say he had  
ever before seen.

## V.

Bot Arthure wolde not ete til al were serued,  
He wat; so Ioly of his Ioyfnes, & sum-quat child gered,  
His lif liked hym lyȝt, he louied þe lasse  
88 Aufþer to lenge lye, or to longe sitte,

Arthur would  
not eat,

nor would he  
long sit

<sup>1</sup> werere, MS.



- So bisied him his ȝonge blod & his brayn wylde;  
 & also anoþer maner meued him eke,  
 þat he þurȝ nobelay had nomen, he wolde neuer ete  
 92 Vpon such a dere day, er hym deuised were  
 Of sum auenturus þyng an vncouþe tale,  
 Of sum mayn mernayle, þat he myȝt trawe,  
 Of<sup>1</sup> alderes, of armes, of oþer auenturus,  
 96 Oþer sum segg hym bi-soȝt of sum siker knyȝt,  
 To loyne wyth hym in iustying in Iopardé to lay,  
 Lede lif for lyf, leue ȝchon oþer,  
 As fortune wolde fulsun hom þe fayrer to haue.  
 100 þis watȝ [þe] kynges countenance where he in court  
 were,  
 At vch farand fest among his fre meny,  
 in halle;  
 þer-fore of face so fere,  
 He stitleȝ stif in stalle,  
 Ful ȝep in þat nw ȝere,  
 Muche mirthe he mas with alle.

until he had witnessed a "wondrous adventure" of some kind.

He of face so bold makes much mirth with all.  
 [Fol. 92b.] 104

## VI.

The king talks with his knights.

Gawayne,

Agravayn,

Bishop Bawdewyn,  
 and Ywain sit on the dais.

The first course is served with cracking of trumpets.

- Thus þer stondes in stale þe stif kyng his-seluen,  
 108 Talkkande bifore þe hyȝe table of trifles ful hende;  
 There gode Gawan watȝ grayþed, Gwenore bisyde,  
 & Agravayn a la dure mayn on þat oþer syde sittes,  
 Boþe þe kynges sister sunes, & ful siker kniȝtes;  
 112 Bischoþ Bawdewyn abof bi-gineȝ þe table,  
 & Ywan, Vryn son, ette wit hym-seluen,  
 þise were diȝt on þe des, & derworþly serued,  
 & siþen mony siker segge at þe sidbordeȝ.  
 116 þen þe first cors come with crakkyng of trumpes,  
 Wyth mony baner ful bryȝt, þat þer-bi hanged,  
 Nwe nakryn noyse with þe noble pipes,  
 Wylde werbles & wyȝt wakned lote,  
 120 þat mony hert ful hiȝe hef at her towches;

<sup>1</sup> Of of, in MS.

Dayntes dryuen þer-wyth of ful dere metes,  
 Foysona of þe fresche, & on so fele disches,  
 þat pine to fynde þe place þe peple bi-forne

It consisted of all  
 dainties in sea-  
 son.

124 For to sette þe syluener,<sup>1</sup> þat sere sewes halden,

on clothe;  
 Iche lede as he loued hym-selue  
 þer laght with-outen lope,

128 - Ay two had disches twelue,  
 Good ber, & bryȝt wyn boþe.

Each two had  
 dishes twelve,  
 good beer and  
 bright wine both.

## VII.

Now wyl I of hor seruise say yow no more,  
 For vch wyȝe may wel wite no wont þat þer were;

132 An oþer noȝe ful newe neȝed biliue,  
 þat þe lude myȝt haf leue lifode to cach.

There was no  
 want of any-  
 thing.

Scarcely had the  
 first course com-  
 menced,

For vneþe wat; þe noȝe not a whyȝe pased,  
 & þe fyrst cource in þe court kyndely serued,

136 þer hales in at þe halle dor aȝ aghlich mayster,  
 On þe most on þe molde on mesure hyȝhe;

when there  
 rushes in at the  
 hall-door a  
 knight;

Fro þe swyre to þe swaȝe so sware & so pik,  
 & his lyndes & his lymes so longe & so grete,

140 Half dayn in erde I hope þat he were.

the tallest on  
 earth

[Fol. 93.]

Bot mon, most I algate mynn hym to bene,  
 & þat þe myriest in his muckel þat myȝt ride;

he must have  
 been.

For of bak & of brest al were his boȝi sturne,

His back and  
 breast were  
 great,  
 but his belly and  
 waist were small.

144 Bot his wombe & his wast were worthily smale,  
 & alle his fetures folȝande, in forme þat he hade,

ful clene;

For wonder of his hwe men hade,

148 Set in his semblaunt sene;

He ferde as freke were fade,

& ouer-al enker grene.

## VIII.

Ande al grayȝed in grene þis gome & his wedes,

152 A strayt cote ful streȝt, þat stek on his sides,

He was clothed  
 entirely in green.

<sup>1</sup> syluener (?) (dishes).

## A HORSE, GREEN AS GRASS,

*over*  
A mere mantle abof, *adorned* mensked with-inne,  
With pelure pured apert þe pane ful clene,

With blyþe blanner ful bryȝt, & his hod boþe,

156 þat wat; *carried* fast fro his lokkeȝ, & layde on his schulderes;

Heme wel haled, hose of þat same grene,

þat spenēt on his sparylȝ, & clene spures vnder,

Of bryȝt golde, vpon silk bordes, barred ful ryche,

160 & scholes vnder schankes, þere þe schalk rides;

& alle his vesture nerayly wat; clene verdure,

Boþe þe barres of his belt & *over* blyþe stones,

þat were richely rayled in his aray clene,

164 Aboutte hym-self & his sadel, vpon silk werkeȝ,

þat were to ter for to telle of tryfles þe halue,

þat were enbrauded abof, wyth bryddes & flyȝes,

With gay gauds of grene, þe golde ay in myddes;

168 þe pendautes of his paytture, þe proude cropure,

His molaynes, & alle þe metail anamayld was þenne,

þe steropes þat he stod on, stayned of þe same,

& his arsouȝ; al alter, & his apel sturtes,

172 þat euer glemere<sup>1</sup> & glent al of grene stones.

þe fole þat he ferkkes on, fyn of þat ilke,

sertayn;

A grene hors gret & pikke,

A stede ful stif to strayne,

In brawdren brydel quik,

To þe gome he wat; ful gayn.

His spurs were of  
bright gold.

His saddle was  
embroidered  
with birds and  
flies.

The foal that he  
rode upon was  
green;

it was a steed full  
stiff to guide.

[Fol. 93a.]

## IX.

Gaily was the  
knight attired.

Wel gay wat; þis gome gered in grene,

180 & þe here of his hed of his hors swete;

Fayre fannand fax vmbe-foldes his schulderes;

A much berd as<sup>2</sup> a busk ouer his brest henges,

þat wyth his hiȝlich here, þat of his hed reches,

184 Wat; enesed al vmbe-torne, a-bof his elbowes,

His great beard,  
like a bush, hung  
on his breast.

<sup>1</sup> glemed (?).

<sup>2</sup> as as, in MS.

pat half his armes þer vnder were halched in þe wyse  
Of a kynge; capados, þat closes his swyre.

þe mane of þat mayn hors much to hit lyke,

The horse's mane  
was decked with  
golden threads.

188 Wel cresped & cemmaed wyth knottes ful mony,

Folden in wyth fildore aboute þe fayre grene,

Ay a herle of þe here, an oþer of golde;

þe tayl & his toppyng twynnen of a sute,

Its tail was bound  
with a green  
band.

192 & bounden boþe wyth a bande of a bryzt grene,

Dubbed wyth ful dere stone; as þe dok lasted,

Syþen þrawn wyth a þwong a þwarle knot alofte,

þer mony belle; ful bryzt of brende golde rungen.

196 Such a fole vpon folde, ne freke þat hym rydes,

Wat; neuer sene in þat sale wyth syt er þat tyme,

Such a foal nor  
a knight were  
never before seen.

with yþe;

He loked as layt so lyzt,

200 So sayd al þat hym syþe,

Hit semed as no mon myzt,

It seemed that no  
man might en-  
dure his dints.

Vnder his dyntte; dryþe.

# X.

Wheþer hade he no helme ne hawb[e]rgh nauþer,

204 Ne no pysan, ne no plate þat pented to armes,

Ne no schafte, ne no schelde, to schwne ne to smyte,

Bot in his on honde he hade a holyn bobbe,

The knight car-  
ried neither spear  
nor shield.

þat is grattest in grene, when greue; ar bare,

In one hand was  
a holly bough,

208 & an ax in his oþer, a hoge & vn-mete,

A spetos sparþe to expoun in spelle quo-so myzt;

þe hede of an eln;erde þe large lenkþe hade,

þe grayn al of grene stele and of golde hewen,

in the other an  
axe,

212 þe bit burnyst bryzt, with a brod egge,

As wel schapen to schere as scharp rasores;

þe stele of a stif staf þe sturne hit bi-grypte,

þat wat; waunden wyth yrn to þe wande; ende,

the edge of which  
was as keen as a  
sharp razor,

216 & al bigrauen with grene, in gracons<sup>1</sup> werkes;

[Fol. 94.]  
and the handle  
was encased in

<sup>1</sup> gracious (?).

iron, curiously  
"graven with  
green, in gracious  
works."

Thus arrayed the  
Green Knight  
enters the hall,

without saluting  
any one.

He asks for the  
"governor" of  
the company,

and looks for the  
most renowned.

A lace lapped aboute, þat louked at þe hede,  
& so after þe halme halched ful ofte,

Wyth tryed tassele; þerto tacched in-noghæ,

220 On botoun; of þe bryȝt grene brayden ful ryche.

þis haþel helde; hym in, & þe halle entres,

Driuande to þe heȝe dece, dut he no woþe,

Haylsed he neuer one, bot heȝe he ouer loket.

224 þe fyrst word þat he warp, "wher is," he sayd,

"þe gouernour of þis gyng? gladly I wolde

Se þat segg in syȝt, & with hym self speke

raysoun."

228

To knyȝte; he kest his yȝe,

& reled hym vp & doun,

He stemmed & con studie,

Quo walt þer most renoun.

# XI.

Much they mar-  
vel to see a man  
and a horse

as green as grass.

Never before had  
they seen such a  
sight as this.

They were afraid  
to answer,

and were as  
silent as if sleep  
had taken pos-  
session of them;

some from fear  
and others from  
courtesy.

232 Ther wat; loking on lenþe, þe lude to be-holde,

For vch mon had meruayle quat hit mene myȝt,

þat a haþel & a horse myȝt such a hwe lach,

As growe grene as þe gres & grener hit semed,

236 þen grene aumayl on golde lowande bryȝtor;

Al studied þat þer stod, & stalked hym nerre,

Wyth al þe wonder of þe worlde, what he worch schulde.

For fele sellye; had þay sen, bot such neuer are,

240 For-þi for fantoum & fayryȝe þe folk þere hit demed;

þerfore to answere wat; arȝe mony aþel freke,

& al stouned at his steuen, & ston-stil seten,

In a swoghe sylence þur; þe sale riche

244 As al were slypped vpon slepe so slaked hor lote;

in hyȝe;

I deme hit not al for doute,

Bot sum for cortaysye,

248 Bot let hym þat al schulde loute,

Cast vnto þat wyȝe.

## XII.

- penn Arþour bifore þe hiȝ dece þat auenture byholdeȝ,  
 & rekenly hym reuerenced, for rad was he neuer,
- 252 & sayde, "wyȝe, welcum iwys to þis place,  
 þe hede of þis ostel Arthour I hat;  
 Liȝt luflych adoun, & lenge, I þe praye,  
 & quat so þy wyll is, we schal wyt after."
- 256 "Nay, ashelp me," quoth þe hapel, "he þat on hyȝe syttes,  
 To wone any quyle in þis won, hit watȝ not myn ernde;  
 Bot for þe los of þe lede is lyft vp so hyȝe,  
 & þy burȝ & þy burnes best ar holden,
- 260 Stifest vnder stel-gere on stedes to ryde,  
 þe wyȝtest and þe worȝyest of þe worldes kynde,  
 Preue for to play wyth in oþer pure laykeȝ;  
 & here is kydde cortaysye, as I haf herd carp,
- 264 & þat hatȝ wayned me hider, I-wyis, at þis tyme.  
 ȝe may be seker bi þis braunch þat I bere here,  
 þat I passe as in pes, & no plyȝt seche;  
 For had I founded in fere, in feȝtyng wyse,
- 268 I haue a hauberghȝ at home & a helme boȝe,  
 A schelde, & a scharp spere, schinande bryȝt,  
 Ande oþer weppenes to welde, I wene wel als,  
 Bot for I wolde no were, my wedeȝ ar softer.
- 272 Bot if þou be so bold as alle burneȝ tellen,  
 þou wyl grant me godly þe gomen þat I ask,  
 bi ryȝt."
- Arthour con onsware,  
 276 & sayd, "syr cortays knyȝt,  
 If þou craue batayl bare,  
 Here fayleȝ þou not to fyȝt."

Arthur salutes  
the Green  
Knight,

[Fol. 94b.]  
bids him wel-  
come, and invites  
him to stay  
awhile.

The knight says  
that he will not  
tarry.

He seeks the  
most vallant that  
he may prove  
him.

He comes in  
peace.

At home, how-  
ever, he has both  
shield and spear.

Arthur assures  
him that he shall  
not fail to find an  
opponent worthy  
of him.

## XIII.

- "Nay, frayst I no fyȝt, in fayth I þe telle,  
 280 Hit arn aboute on þis bench bot berdleȝ chylder;  
 If I were hasped in armes on a heȝe stede,  
 Here is no mon me to mach, for myȝteȝ so wayke.

"I seek no fight,"  
says the knight.

"Here are only  
beardless chil-  
dren."

"Here is no man  
to mate"

- For-þy I craue in þis court a crystemas gomen,  
 Here are brave ones many, 284 For hit is ȝol & nwe ȝer, & here ar ȝep mony ;  
 If any be bold enough to 'strike a stroke for another,'  
 Be so bolde in his blod, brayn in hys hede,  
 þat dar stifly strike a strok for an oþer,  
 288 I schal gif hym of my gyft þys giserne ryche,  
 this axe shall be his;  
 þis ax, þat is heuē in-nogh, to hondels as hym lykes,  
 & I schal bide þe fyrst bur, as bare as I sitte.  
 If any freke be so felle to fonde þat I telle,  
 292 Lepe lyȝtly me to, & lach þis weppen,  
 I quit clayme hit for euer, kepe hit as his anen,  
 & I schal stonde hym a strok, stif on þis flet,  
 Elle; þou wyl diȝt me þe dom to dele hym an oþer,  
 296 barlay ;  
 & ȝet gif hym respite,  
 within a twelve-month and a day." A twelmonyth & a day ;  
 Now hyȝe, & let se tite  
 300 Dar any her-inne oȝt say."

## XIV.

- Fear kept all silent.  
 The knight rolled his red eyes about,  
 and bent his bristly green brows.  
 Waving his beard awhile, he exclaimed:  
 "What! is this Arthur's court?"  
 Forsooth the renown of the Round Table is overturned 'with a word of one man's speech.'  
 If he hem stowped vpon fyrst, stiller were þanne  
 Alle þe hered-men in halle, þe hyȝ; & þe loȝe ;  
 þe renk on his rounce hym riched in his sadel,  
 304 & funisch-ly his rede yȝen he reled aboute,  
 Bende his bresed broȝez, bly-cande grene,  
 Wayued his berde for to wayte quo-so wolde ryse  
 When non wolde kepe hym with carþ he cōged ful hyȝe,  
 308 Ande timed hym ful richley, & tyt hym to speke :  
 "What, is þis Arpures hous," quoth þe hapel þenne,  
 "þat al þe rous rennes of, þurȝ ryalmes so mony ?  
 Where is now your souerquydrye, & your conquestes,  
 312 Your gryndel-layk, & your greme, & your grete wordes?  
 Now is þe reuel & þe renoun of þe rounde table  
 Ouer-walt wyth a worde of on wyȝes speche ;  
 For al dares for drede, withoute dynt schewed !"  
 316 Wyth þis he laȝes so loude, þat þe lorde greded ;

pe blod schot for scham in-to his schyre face  
& lere;

Arthur blushes  
for shame.

320 He wex as wroth as winde,  
So did alle þat þer were,  
pe kyng as kene bi kynde,  
þen stod þat stif mon nere.

He waxes as  
wroth as the  
wind.

## XV.

Ande sayde, "habel, by heuen þyn askyng is nys,  
324 & as þou foly hat; frayst, fynde þe be-houes;  
I know no gome þat is gast of þy grete wordes.  
Gif me now þy geserne, vpon gode; halue,  
& I schal bayen þy bone, þat þou biden habbes."  
328 Lyztly lepe; he hym to, & lajt at his honde;  
þen feersly þat oþer freke vpon fote lyztis.  
Now hat; Arthure his axe, & þe halme grype;  
& sturnely sture; lit aboute, þat stryke wyth hit þoȝt.  
332 þe stif mon hym bifore stod vpon hyȝt,  
Herre þen ani in þe hous by þe hede & more;  
Wyth sturne where<sup>1</sup> þer he stod, he stroked his berde,  
& wyth a countenance dryȝe he droȝ down his cote.  
336 No more mate ne dismayd for hys mayn dinte,  
þen any burne vpon bench hade broȝt hym to drynk  
of wyne,

He assures the  
knight that no  
one is afraid of  
his great words.

[Fol. 95b.]

Arthur seizes his  
axe.

The knight,  
stroking his  
beard, awaits the  
blow, and with a  
"dry countenance"  
draws  
down his coat.

340 Gawan, þat sate bi þe quene,  
To þe kyng he can enclyne,  
"I be-seche now with saȝe; sene,  
þis mellely mot be myne."

Sir Gawayne be-  
seeches the king  
to let him under-  
take the blow.

## XVI.

"Wolde ȝe, worþilych lorde," quoth Gawan to þe kyng,  
344 "Bid me boȝe fro þis benche, & stonde by yow þere,  
þat I wyth-oute rydanye myȝt voyde þis table,  
& þat my legge lady lyked not ille,

He asks permis-  
sion to leave the  
table; he says,

<sup>1</sup> chere (?).



- I wolde com to your counseyl, bifore your cort ryche.
- it is not meet  
that Arthur  
should be active  
in the matter,  
  
while so many  
bold ones sit  
upon bench.
- 348 For me þink hit not semly, as hit is soþ knawen,  
þer such an askyng is haened so hye in your sale,  
þaȝ ȝe your-self be talenttyf to take hit to your-seluen,  
Whil mony so bolde yow aboute vpon bench sytten.
- 352 þat vnder heuen, I hope, non hayer et of wyllē,  
Ne better bodyes on bent, þer baret is rered;  
I am þe wakkest, I wot, and of wyt feblest,  
& lest luf of my lyf, quo laytes þe sope,
- Although the  
weakest, he is  
quite ready to  
meet the Green  
Knight.
- 356 Bot for as much as ȝe ar myn em, I am only to prayse,  
No bountē bot your blod I in my bodē knowe;  
& syþen þis note is so wys, þat noȝ hit yow falles,  
& I haue frayned hit at yow fyrst, foldeȝ hit to me,
- 360 & if I carp not comlyly, let alle þis cort rych,  
Ryche to-geder con roþ,  
& syþen þay reddē alle same,  
To ryd þe kyng wyth croun,  
& gif Gawan þe game.
- The nobles en-  
treat Arthur to  
"give Gawayne  
the game."
- 364

## XVII.

- [Fol. 96.] þen comaunded þe kyng þe knyȝt for to ryse;  
& he ful radly vp ros, & reached hym fayre,
- The king gives  
his nephew his  
weapon,
- 368 Kneled down bifore þe kyng, & cacheȝ þat weppen;  
& he luflyly hit hym laft, & lyfte vp his honde,  
& gef hym goddeȝ blessing, & gladly hym biddes  
þat his hert & his honde schulde hardi be sope.
- and tells him to  
keep heart and  
hand steady.
- 372 "Kepe þe cosyn," quoth þe kyng, "þat þou on kyrf  
setteȝ  
& if þou redeȝ hym ryt, redly I trowe,  
þat þou schal byden þe þur þat he schal bede after."  
Gawan gotȝ to þe gome, with giserne in honde,
- 376 & he boldly hym bydeȝ, he bayst neuer þe helder.  
þen carppeȝ to syr Gawan þe knyȝt in þe grene  
"Refourme we oure forwardes, er we fyre passe,  
Fyrst I epe þe, habel, how þat þou hattes,
- The Green  
Knight enquires  
the name of his  
opponent.

- 380 þat þou me telle truly, as I trust may? "<sup>believe</sup>  
 "In god fayth," quoth þe goode knyzt, "Gawan I hatte,<sup>am called</sup>  
 þat bede þe þis buffet, quat-so bi-falle; after,  
 & at þis tyme twelmonyth take at þe anoper,  
 384 Wyth what weppen so þou wylt, & wyth no wy; elle,<sup>mm</sup>  
 on lyde."<sup>chance</sup>  
 þat oþer onsware; agayn,  
 "Sir Gawan, so mot I þryue,<sup>thru</sup>  
 388 As I am ferly fayn,<sup>understand, find</sup>  
 þis dint þat þou schal dryue."<sup>sure</sup>  
 The other thereof  
 is glad.

## XVIII.

- "Bi gog," quoth þe grene knyzt, "syr Gawan, me lykes,<sup>requested</sup>  
 þat I schal fange at þy fast þat I haf frayst here;  
 392 & þou hast redily rehersed, bi resoun ful trwe,  
 Clanky al þe couenaunt þat I þe kynge asked,  
 Saf þat þou schal siker me, segge, by þi trawþe,<sup>thanks</sup>  
 þat þou schal seche me bi-self, where-so þou hopes  
 396 I may be funde vpon folde, & foþ þe such wages  
 As þou deles me to day, bifore þis douþe ryche."  
 "Where schulde I wale þe," quoth Gauan, "where is  
 þy place?  
 I wot neuer where þou wones, bi hym þat me wrozt,  
 400 Ne I know not þe, knyzt, þy cort, ne þi name.  
 Bot teche me truly þer-to, & telle me howe þou hattes,<sup>as well</sup>  
 & I schal ware alle my wyt to wyne me þeder,  
 & þat I swere þe for soþe, & by my seker trawþe."  
 [Pol. 96b.]  
 404 "þat is in-nogh in nwe þer, hit nedes no more,"  
 Quoth þe gome in þe grene to Gawan þe hende,  
 "Gif I þe telle trawly, quen I þe tape haue,  
 & þou me smopely hat; smyten, smartly I þe teche  
 408 Of my hous, & my home, & myn owen nome,  
 þen may þou frayst my fare, & forwarde; holde,  
 & if I spende no speche, þenne spede; þou þe better,  
 For þou may leng in þy longe, & layt no fyrre,  
 412 bot slokes;<sup>stop</sup>  
 "It pleases me  
 well, Sir Ga-  
 wayne," says the  
 Green Knight,  
 "that I shall re-  
 ceive a blow from  
 thy fist;  
 but thou must  
 swear that thou  
 wilt seek me,  
 to receive the  
 blow in return."  
 "Where shall I  
 seek thee?" says  
 Sir Gawayne;  
 "tell me thy  
 name and abode  
 and I will find  
 thee."  
 "When thou  
 hast smitten  
 me," says the  
 knight, "then  
 tell I thee of my  
 home and name;  
 if I speak not at  
 all, so much the  
 better for thee."

Take now thy  
grim tool, and let  
us see how thou  
knockest."

<sup>2.41</sup>  
Ta now þy grymme tole to þe,  
& let se how þou choke;

"Gladly syr, for soþe,"

416

Quoth Gawan; his ax he strokes.

## XIX.

The Green  
Knight

puts his long  
lovely locks aside  
and lays bare his  
neck.

The grene knyȝt vpon grounde, <sup>properly</sup> grayely hym dresses,  
A littel lut with þe hede, þe fere he diskouere;

His longo louelych lokke; he layd ouer his croun,

420 Let þe naked nec to þe note schewe.

Gawan gripped to his ax, & gederes hit on hyȝt,

þe kay fote on þe folde he be-fore sette,

Let hit down lytly lyt on þe naked,

Sir Gawayne lets  
fall his axe,

424 þat þe scharp of þe schalk schyndered þe bones,

and severs the  
head from the  
body.

& schrank þurȝ þe schyre grece, & scade hit in twyane,

þat þe bit of þe broun stel bot on þe grounde.

The head falls to  
the earth.

Manyknekit aside  
with their feet.

428 þat fele hit forned wyth her fete, þere hit forth roled;

þe blod brayd fro þe body, þat blykked on þe grene;

The knight never  
falters;

& nawþer faltored ne fel þe freke neup-þe-belder,

Bot styȝly he start forth vpon styȝ schonkes,

he rushes forth,  
seizes his head,

432 & ru[n] yschly he raȝt out, þere as renkke; stoden,

Laȝt to his luffly hed, & lyft hit vp sone;

steps into the  
saddle,

holding the while  
the head in his  
hand by the hair,

436 & his hede, by þe here in his honde halde;

& as sadly þe segge hym in his sadel sette,

As non vnhap had hym ayled, þaȝ hedle; ho we,

and turns his  
horse about.

440

He brayde his bluk<sup>2</sup> aboute,

þat vgly bodi þat bledde,

Moni on of hym had doute,

Bi þat his resoun; were redde.

[Fol. 97.]

<sup>1</sup> he were (?) or nowe (?).

<sup>2</sup> blunk (?).

## XX.

- 444 For þe hede in his honde he halde; vp euen,  
 To-ward þe derrest on þe dece he dresse; þe face,  
 & hit lyfte vp þe yȝe-lydde; & loked ful brode,  
 & meleð þus much with his muthe, as ȝe may now here,  
 448 "Loke, Gawan, þou be gray þe to go as þou hette;,  
 & layte as lely til þou me, lude, fynde,  
 As þou hat; hette in þis halle, herande þise knyȝtes;  
 To þe grene chapel þou chose, I charge þe to rotte,  
 452 Such a dunt as þou hat; dalt disserued þou habbe;,  
 To be ȝederly ȝolden on nw ȝeres morn;  
 þe knyȝt of þe grene chapel men knowen me mony;  
 For-þi me for to fynde if þou frayste; sayle; þou neuer,  
 456 þer-fore com, oþer recreant be calde þe be-houes."  
 With a rumisch rout þe rayne; he torne;,  
 Halled out at þe hal-dor, his hed in his hande,  
 þat þe fyr of þe flynt flaxe fro fole houes.  
 460 To quat kyth he be-gom, kn[e]we non þere,  
 Neuer more þen þay wyste fram queþen he wat; women;  
 what þenne?  
 þe kyng & Gawen þare,  
 464 At þat grene þay laȝe & grene,  
 ȝet breued wat; hit ful bare,  
 A moruayl among þo menne.
- The head lifts up its eyelids,  
 and addresses Sir Gawayne; "Look thou, be ready to go as thou hast promised,  
 and seek till thou findest me.  
 Get thee to the Green Chapel,  
 there to receive a blow on New Year's morn.  
 Fail thou never;  
 Come, or recreant be called."  
 The Green Knight then rushes out of the hall, his head in his hand.
- At that green one Arthur and Gawayne "laugh and grin."

## XXI.

- þa; Arþor þe hende kyng at hert hade wonder,  
 468 He let no semblaunt be sene, bot sayde ful hyȝe  
 To þe comlych quene, wyth cortays speche,  
 "Dere dame, to day demay yow neuer;  
 Wel by-commes such craft vpon cristmasse,  
 472 Laykyng of enterlude; to laȝe & to syng.  
 Among þise, kynde caroles of knyȝte; & ladyȝe;  
 Neuer-þe-lece to my mete I may me wel dres,  
 For I haf sen a selly, I may not for-sake."  
 476 He glent vpon syr Gawen, & gaynly he sayde,
- Arthur addresses the queen:  
 "Dear dame, be not dismayed; such marvels well become the Christmas festival;  
 I may now go to meat."

Sir Gawayne,  
hang up thine  
axe." [Fol. 97b.]

"Now syr, heng vp þyn ax, þat hat; in-nogh hewen."  
& hit wat; don abof þe dece, on doser to henge,  
þer alle men for meruayl myȝt on hit loke,  
480 & bi trwe tytel þer-of to telle þe wonder.  
þenne þay boȝed to a borde þise burnes to-geder,  
þe kyng & þe gode knyȝt, & kene men hem serued  
Of alle dayntyȝ; double, as derrest myȝt falle,  
484 Wyth alle maner of mete & mynstralcie boȝe;  
Wyth wele walt þay þat day, til worþed an ende,  
in londe.

Now beware, Sir  
Gawayne, lest  
thou fail to seek 488  
the adventure  
that thou hast  
taken in hand.

Now þenk wel, syr Gawan,  
For woþe þat þou ne wonde,  
þis auenture forto frayn,  
þat þou hat; tan on honde.

### [FYTTE THE SECOND.]

#### I.

This marvel  
serves to keep up  
a brisk conversa-  
tion in Court.

492 **T**HIS hanselle hat; Arthur of auenturus on fyrst,  
In ȝonge ȝer, for he ȝerned ȝelþyng to here,  
Thaȝ hym wordeȝ were wane, when þay to sete wenten;  
Now ar þay stoken of sturne werk staf-ful her hond.  
Gawan wat; glad to be-gynne þose gomneȝ in halle,  
496 Bot þaȝ þe ende be heuy, haf ȝe no wonder;  
For þaȝ man ben mery in mynde, quen þay han mayn  
drynk,

The year passes  
full quickly and  
never returns.

A ȝere ȝernes ful ȝerne, & ȝeldeȝ neuer lyke,  
þe forme to be fynisment foldeȝ ful selden.  
500 For-þi þis ȝol ouer-ȝede, & þe ȝere after,  
& vche sesoun serlepes sued after oþer;

After Christmas  
comes the "crab-  
bed Lenten."

After crysten-masse com þe crabbed lentoun, ~ ~  
þat fraysteȝ flesch wyth þe fysche & fode more symple;  
504 Bot þenne þe weder of þe worlde wyth wynter ~~hit~~ þrepeȝ,  
Colde clengeȝ adoun, cloudeȝ vp-lyften,  
Schyre schedeȝ þe rayn in schowreȝ ful warme,

Springsets in and  
warm showers  
descend;

Falle; vpon fayre flat, flowre; þere schewen,  
508 Boþe grounde; & þe greue; grene ar her wede;  
Brydde; busken to bylde, & bremlych syngen,  
For solace of þe softe somer þat sues þer-after,  
bi bonk;

The groves be-  
come green ;  
Birds build and  
sing,  
for joy of the  
summer that fol-  
lows ;

512      & blossom; bolne to blowe,  
             Bi rawe; rych & ronk,  
             pen note; noble in-no<sup>u</sup>pe,  
             Ar herde in wod so wlonk. <sup>fair</sup>

Blossoms begin  
to bloom,  
and noble notes  
are heard in the  
woods.  
[Fol. 98.]

## II.

516 After þe sesoup of somer wyth þe soft wynde,  
 Quen ȝeferus syflez hym-self on sede; & erbeþ,  
 Wela-wynne is þe wort þat woxes þer-oute,  
 When þe dōnkande dewe dropeþ of þe leueþ,

**After the soft  
winds of summer.**

520 To hīde a blysful blusch of þe bryȝt sunne.  
 Bot þen hyȝes heruest, & hardenes hym sone,  
 Warneȝ hym for þe wynter to wax ful rype;  
 He dryues wyth droȝt þe dust for to ryse,

beautiful are the  
flowers wet with  
dew drops.

But harvest approaches soon,

524 Fro þe face of the folde to flyȝe ful hyȝe;  
 Wroþe wynde of þe welkyn wrastele; with þe sunne,  
 þe leue; lancen fro þe lynde, & lyȝten on þe grounde,  
 & al grayes þe gres, þat grene watȝ ere;

and drives the  
dust about.

528 þenne al rype; & rote; þat ros vpon fyrst,  
& þus þirnez þe þere in þisterdayez mony,  
& wynter wynde; aȝayn, as þe worlde askeþ;  
no sage.

The leaves drop  
off the trees,  
the grass be-  
comes gray,  
and all ripens and  
rots.

Winter winds  
round again,

532            Til mezel-mas mone,  
               Wat; cumen wyth wynter wage;  
               þen þenkke; Gawan ful sone,  
               Of his anious uyage.

and then Sir Gawayne thinks of his dread journey.

### III.

536 þet quyl al-hal-day with Arþor he lenges,  
 & he made a fare on þat fest, for þe frekeꝝ sake,  
 With much reuel & ryche of þe rounde table ;

**On All-hallows day Arthur makes a feast for his nephew's sake.**

- Knyȝteȝ ful cortays & comlych ladies,  
 540 Al for luf of þat lede in longynge þay were,  
 Bot neuer-þe-lece ne þe later þay neuened bot *merþe*,  
 Mony ioyleȝ for þat ientyle iapeȝ þer maden.  
 After meat, Sir  
 Gawayne thus  
 speaks to his  
 uncle :  
 "Now, liege lord,  
 I ask leave of  
 you,  
 for I am bound on  
 the morn to seek  
 the Green  
 Knight."  
 544 & spekeȝ of his passage, & pertly he sayde,  
 "Now, *lege* lorde of my lyf, leue I *yow* ask ;  
 ȝe knowe þe cost of þis cace, kepe I no more  
 To telle *yow* teneȝ þer-of neuer bot *trifel* ;  
 548 Bot I am boun to þe bur barely to morne,  
 To sech þe gome of þe grene, as god wyl me wysse."  
 Þenne þe best of þe burȝ boȝed to-geder,  
 Aywan, & Errik, & oþer ful mony,  
 [Fol. 98b.] 552 *Syr* Doddinaual de Sauage, þe duk of Clarence,  
 Launcelot, & Lyonel, & Lucan þe gode,  
*Syr* Boos, & sir Byduer, big men boȝe,  
 & mony oþer menskful, with Mador de la Port.  
 Many nobles, the  
 best of the court,  
 counsel and com-  
 fort him.  
 556 Alle þis compayny of court com þe kyng nerre,  
 For to counseyl þe knyȝt, with care at her hert ;  
 þere watȝ much derue<sup>1</sup> doel driuen in þe sale,  
 þat so worthe as Wawan schulde wende on þat ernde,  
 560 To dryȝe a delful dynt, & dele no more  
 wyth bronde.  
 þe knyȝt mad ay god chere,  
 & sayde, "quat schuld I wonde,  
 Of destines derf & dere,  
 What may mon do bot fonde ?"  
 Gawayne de-  
 clares that he has  
 nothing to fear.  
 564

## IV.

- On the morn he  
 asks for his arms.  
 He dowelleȝ þer al þat day, and dresseȝ on þe morn,  
 Askeȝ erly hys armeȝ, & alle were þay broȝt  
 A carpet is spread  
 on the floor,  
 568 Fyrst a tule tapit, tyȝt ouer þe flet,  
 & miche watȝ þe gyld gere þat glent þer alofte ;  
 and he steps  
 thereon.  
 þe stif mon steppeȝ þeron, & þe stel hondeleȝ,

<sup>1</sup> derne (?).

- Dubbed in a dublet of a dere tars,  
 572 & syþen a crafty capados, closed aloft,  
 þat wyth a bryȝt blaunner was bounden with-inne;  
 þenne set þay þe sabatoun; vpon þe segge foteȝ,  
 His legeȝ lapped in stel with lufflych greueȝ,  
 576 With polayneȝ piched þer-to, policed ful clene,  
 Aboute his kneȝ knaged wyth knoteȝ of golde;  
 Queme quyssewes þen, þat coyntlych closed  
 His thik þrawen þyȝeȝ, with þwonges to-tachched;  
 580 & syþen þe brawdren bryne of bryȝt stel ryngȝ,  
 Vmbe-weued þat wyȝ, vpon wlonk stuffe;  
 & wel bornyst brace vpon his boþe armes,  
 With gode cowters & gay, & gloueȝ of plate,  
 584 & alle þe godlych gere þat hym gayn schulde  
 þat tyde;  
 Wyth ryche cote armure,  
 His gold sporeȝ spend with pryde,  
 588 Gurde wyth a bront ful sure,  
 With silk sayn vmbe his syde.

He is dubbed in  
 a dublet of Tar-  
 sic silk, and a  
 well made hood.

They set steel  
 shoes on his feet,  
 and lap his legs  
 in steel greaves.

Fair cuisses en-  
 close his thighs,

and afterwards  
 they put on the  
 steel habergeon,

well-burnished  
 braces, elbow  
 pieces, and gloves  
 of plate.

Over all this is  
 placed the coat  
 armour.  
 His spurs are  
 then fixed,  
 and his sword is  
 attached to his  
 side by a silken  
 girdle.

## V.

- When he watȝ hasped in armes, his harnays watȝ ryche,  
 þe lest lachet ou[þ]er loupe lemed of golde;  
 592 So harnayst as he watȝ he herkneȝ his masse,  
 Offred & honoured at þe heȝe auter;  
 Syþen he comeȝ to þe kyng & to his cort fereȝ,  
 Lacheȝ luffly his leue at lordeȝ & ladyeȝ;  
 596 & þay hym kyst & conueyed, bikende hym to kryst.  
 Bi þat watȝ Gryngolet grayth, & gurde with a sadel,  
 þat glemed ful gayly with mony golde frenges,  
 Ay quere naylet ful nwe for þat note ryched;  
 600 þe brydel barred a-boute, with bryȝt golde bounden;  
 þe apparayl of þe paytture, & of þe proude skyrteȝ,  
 þe cropore, & þe couertor, acorded wyth þe arsounȝ;  
 & al watȝ rayled on red ryche golde nayleȝ,  
 604 þat al glytered & glent as glem of þe sunne.

[Fol. 99a.]  
 Thus arrayed the  
 knight hears  
 mass,

and afterwards  
 takes leave of  
 Arthur and his  
 court.

By that time his  
 horse Gringolet  
 was ready,

the harness of  
 which glittered  
 like the "gleam  
 of the sun."



Then Sir Ga-  
wayne sets his  
helmet upon his  
head,

fastened behind  
with a "uri-  
soun,"

richly embroi-  
dered with gems.

- þenne hentes he þe helme, & hastily hit kysses,  
þat wat; stapled stifly, & stoffed wyth-inne;  
Hit wat; hyȝe on his hede, hasped bihynde,  
608 Wyth a lyȝt lyn vrysoun ouer þe auentayle,  
Enbrawdē & bounden wyth þe best gemmeȝ,  
On brode sylkyn borde, & bryddeȝ on semeȝ,  
As papiayeȝ paynted pernyng bitwene,  
612 Tortors & trulofeȝ entayled so þyk,  
As mony burde þer-aboutē had ben seuen wynter  
in tounē;  
þe cercle wat; more o prys,  
616 þat vmbe-clypped hys croun,  
Of diamanteȝ; a deuys,  
þat boȝe were bryȝt & broun.

The circle around  
the helmet was  
decked with dia-  
monds.

## VI.

Then they show  
him his shield  
with the "pent-  
angle" of pure  
gold.

The "pentangle"  
was devised by  
Solomon as a  
token of truth.

[Fol. 99b.]

It is called the  
endless knot.

It well becomes  
the good Sir Ga-  
wayne,

- Then þayschewd hym þe schelde, þat was of schyr gouleȝ,  
620 Wyth þe pentangel de-paynt of pure golde hweȝ;  
He braydeȝ hit by þe baude-ryk, a-boute þe hals kesteȝ,  
þat bisemed þe segge semlyly fayre.  
& quy þe pentangel apendeȝ to þat prynce noble,  
624 I am in tent yow to telle, þof tary hyt me schulde;  
Hit is a syngne þat Salamon set sum-quyle,  
In bytoknyng of trawþe, bi tytle þat hit habbeȝ,  
For hit is a figure þat haldeȝ fyue poynteȝ,  
628 & vche lyne vmbe-lappeȝ & loukeȝ in oȝer,  
& ay quere hit is eindeleȝ,<sup>1</sup> & Englych hit callen  
Quer-al, as I here, þe endeles knot.  
For-þy hit acordeȝ to þis knyȝt, & to his cler armeȝ,  
632 For ay faythful in fyue & sere fyue syȝeȝ,  
Gawan wat; for gode knawen, & as golde pured,  
Voyded of vche vylany, wyth vertueȝ ennourned  
in mote;  
636 For-þy þe pentangel nwe;  
He ber in schelde & cote,

<sup>1</sup> emdeleȝ (?).

*more of it*  
As tulk of tale most trwe,  
& gentylest knyȝt of loto<sup>1</sup>.

a knight the  
truest of speech  
and the fairest  
of form.

## VII.

640 Fyrst he wat; funden fantle; in his fyue wytte,  
& eife fayled, neuer þe freke in his fyue fyngres,  
& alle his alyauce vpon folde wat; in þe fyue wounde;  
þat cryst kast on þe croys, as þe crede telle;

He was found  
faultless in his  
five wits.

644 & quere-so-euer þys mon in <sup>helle</sup> wat; stad, <sup>discovered</sup>  
His þro þoȝt wat; in þat, þur; alle oþer þynge;  
þat alle his forsnes he fong at þe fyue ioie;  
þat þe hende heuen quene had of hir chylde;

His trust was in  
the five wounds.

648 At þis cause þe knyȝt comlyche hade  
In þe more half of his schelde hir ymage depaynted,  
þat þuen he blusched þerto, his belde neuer payred.  
þe fyrst<sup>1</sup> fyue þat I finde þat þe frek, vsed,

The image of the  
Virgin was de-  
picted upon his  
shield.

652 Wat; fraunchyse, & felayschyp for-be<sup>2</sup> al þyng;  
His clannes & his cortaysye croked were neuer,  
& pite, þat passe; alle poynte; þyse pure fyue  
Were harder happed on þat hapel þen on any oþer.

In cleanness and  
courtesy he was  
never found  
wanting,

656 Now alle þese fyues yþe; forsoþe, were fetled on þis knyȝt,  
& ychone halched in oþer, þat non ende hade,  
& fyched vpon fyue poynte; þat fayld neuer,  
Ne ~~seemed~~ neuer in no syde, ne sundred nouþer,

660 With-oute ende at any noke [a]i quere fynde,  
Where-euer þe gomen bygan, or elod to an ende.  
þer-fore on his schene schelde schapen wat; þe knot,  
þus alle wyth red golde vpon rede gowle;

therefore was the  
endless knot fast-  
ened on his  
shield.

664 þat is þe pure pentaungel wyth þe peple called,  
with lore.

[Fol. 100.]

Now grayped is Gawan gay,  
& laȝt his launce ryȝt þore,  
668 & gef hem alle goud day,  
He wende for euer more.

Sir Gawayne  
seizes his lance  
and bids all  
"good day."

<sup>1</sup> fyft, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> for-bi (?).

## VIII.

He spurs his  
horse and goes on  
his way.

All that saw that 672  
seemly one  
mourned in their  
hearts.

They declared  
that his equal  
was not to be  
found upon  
earth.

It would have  
been better for  
him to have been  
a leader of men,  
680  
than to die by the  
hands of "an  
elvish man."

Much was the  
warm water that  
poured from eyes  
that day.

He spurred þe sted with þe spure, & sprong on his way,  
So stif þat þe ston fyr stroke out þer-after;

Al þat se; þat semly syked in hert,  
& sayde soþly al same segges til oþer,  
Carande for þat comly, "bi kryst, hit is scape,  
þat þou, leude, schal be lost, þat art of lyf noble!

676 To fynde, hys fere vpon folde, in fayth is not eþe;  
Warloker to haf wroȝt had more wyt bene,  
& haf dyȝt ȝonder dere a duk to haue worȝed;

A ſowande leder of lede; in londe hym wel seme;  
680 & so had better haf ben þen britned to noȝt,  
Hadet wyth an aluisch mon, for angarde; pryde.

Who knew euer any kyng such counsel to take,  
As knyȝte; in cauéloun; on cryst-masse gomne;!"

684 Wel much wat; þe warme water þat waltered of yȝen,  
When þat semly syre soȝt fro þo wone;

þat<sup>1</sup> daye;

He made non atode,

688 Bot wyȝtly went hys way,

Mony wylsum way he rode,

þe bok as I herde say.

Meanwhile many  
a weary way goes  
Sir Gawayne.

## IX.

Now rides the  
knight through  
the realms of  
England.

He has no com-  
panion but his  
horse.

No men does he  
see till he ap-  
proaches North  
Wales.

Now ride; þis renk þur; þe ryalme of Logres,  
692 Syr Gauan on gode; halue, þa; hym no gomen þoȝt;  
Oft, leudle; alone, he lenge; on nyȝte;

þer he fonde noȝt hym byfore þe fare þat he lyked;  
Hade he no fere bot his fole, bi frythe; & doune;

696 Ne no gome þot god, bi gate wyth to karp,  
Til þat he neȝed ful noghe<sup>2</sup> in to þe Norþe Wale; ;  
Alle þe iles of Anglesay on lyft half he halde;  
& fare; ouer þe forde; by þe for-londe;

<sup>1</sup> þad, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> nyghe (?).

700 Ouer at þe Holy-Hede, til he hade eft bonk  
 In þe wyldrenesse of Wyrle; wonde þer bot lyte  
 þat an þer god oþer gome wyth goud hert loofed.  
 & ay he frayned, as he ferde, at freke; þat he met,

704 If þay hade herde any karp of a knyȝt grene,  
 In any grounde þer-about, of þe grene chapel;<sup>1</sup>  
 & al nykked hym wyth nay, þat neuer in her lyue  
 þay seȝe neuer no segge þat wat; of suche hwe;

708 of grene.  
 Þe knyȝt tok gates straunge,  
 In mony a bonk vnbene,  
 His cher ful oft con chaunge,  
 712 þat chapel er he myȝt sene.

From Holyhead  
 he passes into  
 Wirral.

[Fol. 100b.]  
 There he finds  
 but few that loved  
 God or man.

He enquires after  
 the Green Knight  
 of the Green  
 Chapel,

but can gain no  
 tidings of him.

His cheer oft  
 changed before  
 he found the  
 Chapel.

## X.

Many klyf he ouer-clambe in contraye; straunge,  
 Fer floten fro his frende; fremedly he ryde;  
 At vche warpe oþer water þer þe wyȝe passed,  
 716 He fonde a foo hym byfore, bot ferly hit were,  
 & þat so foule & so felle, þat feȝt hym by-hode;  
 So mony mayn bi mount þer þe mon fyndeȝ  
 Hit were to tore for to telle of þe tenþe dole.

720 Sumwhyle wyth worme; he werreȝ, & with wolues als,  
 Sumwhyle wyth wodwos, þat woned in þe knarreȝ,  
 Boþe wyth bulle; & bereȝ, & bore; oþer quyle  
 & eþayneȝ, þat hym a-ngelede, of þe heȝe felle;

724 Nade he ben duȝty & dryȝe, & dryȝtyn had serued,  
 Douteles he hade ben ded, & dreped ful ofte.

For werre wrathed hym not so much, þat wynter was  
 wors,

When þe colde cler water fro þe cloudeȝ schadden,

728 & fres er hit falle myȝt to þe fale erpe;

Ner playn wyth þe slete he sleped in his yrnas,  
 Mo nyȝteȝ þen in-noghe in naked rokkeȝ,

Many a cliff he  
 climbed over;

Many a ford and  
 stream he cross-  
 ed, and every-  
 where he found a  
 foe.

It were too tedi-  
 ous to tell the  
 tenth part of his  
 adventures,

with serpents,  
 wolves, and wild  
 men;

with bulls, bears,  
 and boars.

Had he not been  
 both brave and  
 good, doubtless  
 he had been dead.

The sharp winter  
 was far worse  
 than any war that  
 ever troubled  
 him.

<sup>1</sup> chapel, in MS.

Thus in peril he  
travelstill Christ-  
mas-eve.

*per as claterande fro þe crest þe colde borne reane;*  
732 & hinged heþe ouer his hede in hard ysse-ikkles.  
*þus in peryl, & payne, & plytes ful harde,*  
Bi contray carye; *þis knyȝt, tyl kryst-masse euen,*  
al one;

To the Virgin  
Mary he prays to  
guide him to  
some abode.

736 þe knyȝt wel þat tȝde,  
To Mary made his mone,  
þat ho hym red to ryde,  
& wysse hym to sum wone.

[Fol. 101.]

## XI.

On the morn Sir  
Gawayne finds  
himself in a deep  
forest,

740 Bi a mounste on þe morne meryly, he rydes,  
Into a forest ful dep, þat ferly wat; wylde,  
Hiþe hille; on vche a halue, &holt wode; vnder,

where were old  
oaks many a  
hundred.

744 þe hasel & þe ha; þorne were harled al samen,  
With roþe raged mosse rayled ay-where,  
With mony brydde; vnþlyþe vpon bare twygea,  
þat pitosly þer piped for pyne of þe colde.

Many sad birds  
upon bare twigs  
piped piteously  
for the cold.

748 þe gome vpon Gryngolet glyde; hem vnder,  
þur; mony misy & myre, mon al hym one,  
Carande for his costes, lest he ne keuer schulde,  
To se þe seruy<sup>1</sup> of þat syre, þat on þat self nyȝt

Through many a  
mire he goes, that  
he may celebrate  
the birth of  
Christ.

752 Of a burde wat; borne, oure þaret to quelle;  
& þerfore sykyng he sayde, "I be-seche þe, lorde,  
& Mary, þat is myldest moder so dere,  
Of sum herber, þer heȝly I myȝt here masse.

He beseeches the  
Virgin Mary to  
direct him to  
some lodging  
where he may  
hear mass.

756 Ande þy matyne; to-morne, mekely I ask,  
& þer-to prestly I pray my pater & aue,  
& crede."

Blessing himself,  
he says, "Cross  
of Christ, speed  
me!"

760 He rode in his prayere,  
& cryed for his mysdede,  
He sayned hym in syþes sere,  
& sayde "cros kryst me spede!"

<sup>1</sup> seruyce (?).

## XII.

- Nade he sayned hym-self, segge, bot brye,  
 764 Er he wat; war is þe wod of a, won in a mote.  
 Abof a launde, on a lawe, loken vnder boȝes,  
 Of many borelych bole, aboute bi þe diche;  
 A castel þe comlokest þat euer knyȝt aȝte,  
 768 Pyched on a prayere, a park al aboute,  
 With a pyked palays, pynded ful pik,  
 þat ymbe-teȝe mony tre mo þen two myle.  
 þat holde on þat on syde þe kapel aȝsed,  
 772 As hit schemered & schon þur; þe schyre oke;  
 þenne hat; he hendly of his helme, & heȝly he þonke;  
 Jesus & say[nt] Gilyan, þat gentyle ar boȝe,  
 þat cortaysly hade hym kydde, & his cry herkened.  
 776 "Now bone hostel," coȝe þe burne, "I be-seche yow jette!"  
 þenne gedere; he to Gryngolet with þe gilt hele;  
 & he ful chauncely hat; chosen to þe chief gate,  
 þat broȝt bremly þe burne to þe bryȝe ende,  
 780 in haste;  
 þe bryȝe wat; breme vp-brayde,  
 þe ȝate; wer stoken faste,  
 þe walle; were wel arayed,  
 784 Hit dut no wynde; blaste.

Scarcely had he  
blessed himself  
thrice,

when he saw a  
dwelling in the  
wood, set on a  
hill,

the comeliest  
castle he had ever  
beheld.

It shone as the  
sun through the  
bright oaks.

[Fol. 101b.]

Sir Gawayne goes  
to the chief gate,

and finds the  
draw-bridge  
raised, and the  
gates shut fast.

## XIII.

- þe burne bode on bonk, þat on blonk houted,  
 Of þe depe double dich þat drof to þe place,  
 þe walle wod in þe water wonderly depe,  
 788 Ande eft a ful huge heȝt hit haled vpon lofte,  
 Of harde hewen ston vp to þe table;  
 Enbaird vnder þe abataylment, in þe best lawe;  
 & syȝen garyte; ful gaye gered bi-twene,  
 792 Wyth mony luflych loupe, þat louked ful clene;  
 A better barbicane þat burne blusched vpon neuer;  
 & innermore he be-helde þat halle ful hyȝe,

The knight abides  
on the bank,

and observes the  
"huge height,"

with its battle-  
ments and watch  
towers.

Bright and long  
were its round  
towers,

with their well-  
made capitals.

He thinks it fair  
enough if he  
might only come  
within the  
cloister.

Hecalls, and soon  
there comes a  
porter to know  
the knight's er-  
rand.

The draw-bridge  
is let down,

and the gate is  
opened wide to  
receive him.

His horse is well  
stabled.  
Knights and  
squires bring Ga-  
wayne into the  
hall.  
Many a one has-  
tens to take his

- Towre telded bytwene <sup>between</sup> trochet ful pik,  
796 Fayre fyllyole; bat fyzed, & ferlyly long,  
With coruon coprounes, craftyly sleze;  
Chalk whyt chymnees þer ches he in-noȝe,  
Vpon bastel rouez, þat blenked ful quyte;  
800 So mony pynakle payntet wat; poudred ay quere,  
Among þe castel carnelez, clambred so pik,  
þat pared out of papure purely hit semed.  
þe fre freke on þe fole hit fayr in-n[o]ghe þoȝt,  
804 If he myȝt keuer to com þe cloyster wyth-inne,  
To herber in þat hostel, whyl halyday lested  
auinant;  
He calde, & sone þer com  
A porter pure plesauant,  
On þe wal his ernd he nome,  
& haylsed þe knyȝt erraunt.

## XIV.

- "Gode syr," quoth Gawan, "woldeȝ þou go myn ernde,  
812 To þe heȝ lorde of þis hous, herber to craue?"  
"ȝe, Peter," quoth þe porter, "& purely I trowe,<sup>1</sup>  
þat ȝe be, wyȝe, welcum to won quyle yow lykeȝ."  
þen ȝede þat wyȝe aȝayn swyȝe,  
816 & folke frely hym wyth, to fonge þe knyȝt;  
pay let down þe grete draȝt, & derely out ȝeden,  
& kneled down on her knes vpon þe colde erþe,  
To welcum þis ilk wyȝ, as worȝy hom þoȝt;  
pay ȝolden hym þe brode ȝate, ȝarked vp wyde,  
& he hem raysed rekenly, & rod ouer þe brygge;  
Sere seggeȝ hym sesed by sadel, quel<sup>2</sup> he lyȝt,  
& syȝen stabeled his stede stif men in-noȝe.  
824 Knyȝteȝ & swyereȝ comen down þenne,  
For to bryng þis burne<sup>3</sup> wyth blys in-to halle;  
Quen he hef vp his helme, þer hiȝed in-noghe

<sup>1</sup> trowoe, MS.

<sup>2</sup> quyle (?) or (quen ?).

<sup>3</sup> buurne, MS.

- For to hent hit at his honde, þe hende to seruen,  
 828 His bronde & his blasoun boþe þay token.  
 Þen haylsed he ful hendly þo hapele; vch one,  
 & mony proud mon þer presed, þat prynce to honour;  
 Alle hasped in his he; wede to halle þay hym wonnen,  
 832 þer fayre fyre vpon flet fersly brenned.  
 þenne þe lorde of þe lede loute; fro his chambre,  
 For to mete wyth menske þe mon on þe flor;  
 He sayde, "þe ar welcum to welde as yow lykeþ,  
 836 þat here is, al is yowre awen, to haue at yowre wyll  
 & welde."

helmet and  
sword.

The lord of the  
country bids him  
welcome,

- "Graunt mercy," quoth Gawayn,  
 "þer kryst hit yow for-þelde,"  
 840 As freke; þat semed fayn,  
 Ayþer oþer in arme; con felde.

and they embrace  
each other.

## XV.

- Gawayn glyt on þe gome þat godly hym gret,  
 & þyt hit a bolde burne þat þe bur; a;te,  
 844 A hoge hape for þe none; & of hyghs elde;<sup>1</sup>  
 Brode bryt wat; his berde, & al beuer hwed,  
 Sturne stif on þe stryþþe on stalworth schonke;  
 Felle face as þe fyre, & fre of hys speche;  
 848 & wel hym semed for soþe, as þe segge þyt,  
 To lede a lortschyp in lee of leude; ful gode.  
 þe lorde hym charred to a chambre, & chefly<sup>2</sup> cumaunde;  
 To delyuer hym a leude, hym loþly to serue;  
 852 & þere were boun at his bode burne; in-noþe,  
 þat brot hym to a bryt boure, þer beddyng wat; noble,  
 Of cortynes of clene sylk, wyth cler golde hemme;  
 & couertore; ful curious, with comlych pane;  
 856 Of bryt blaunnier a-boue enbrawd bisyde;  
 Rudele; rennande on rope; red golde rynges;  
 Tapyte; tyt to þe woþe, of tuly & tars,

Gawayne looks  
on his host;  
a big bold one he  
seemed.

Beaver-hued was  
his broad beard,

and his face as  
"fell as the fire."

[Fol. 102b.]  
The lord leads  
Gawayne to a  
chamber, and as-  
signs him a page  
to wait upon him.

In this bright  
bower was noble  
bedding;

The curtains were  
of pure silk with  
golden hems;

Tarnie tapestries  
covered the walls  
and the floor.

<sup>1</sup> eldee, MS.

<sup>2</sup> clesly, MS.



- Here the knight  
doffed his ar-  
mour,  
and put on rich  
robes,
- 860 & vnder fete, on þe flet, of folþande sute.  
þer he wat; dispoyled, wyth speche; of myrþe,  
þe burn of his bruny, & of his bryȝt wede;  
Ryche robes ful rad renkke; hem<sup>1</sup> broȝten,  
For to charge, and to chaunge, & chose of the best.
- 864 Sone as he on hent, & happed þer-inne,  
þat sete on hym<sup>2</sup> semly, wyth saylande skyrte;  
þe ver by his uisage verayly hit semed  
Wel neȝ to vche haȝel alle on hwes,
- which well be-  
came him.
- 868 Lowande & lufly, alle his lymme; vnder,  
þat a comloker knyȝt neuer kryst made,  
hem þoȝt;  
Wheþen in worlde he were,  
Hit semed as he myȝt  
Be prynce with-outen pere,  
In felde þer felle men fyȝt.
- A more comely  
knight Christ  
never made.

## XVI.

- A chair is placed  
for Sir Gawayne  
before the fire-  
place.
- 876 A cheyer by-fore þe chemné, þer charcole brenned,  
Wat; grayped for syr Gawan, grayþely with cloþe;  
Whyssynes vpon queldepoyntes, þa[t] koynt wer boþe;  
& þenne a mere mantyle wat; on þat mon cast,  
Of a broun bleeaunt, enbrauded ful ryche,
- A mantle of fine  
linen, richly em-  
broidered, is  
thrown over him.
- 880 & fayre furred wyth-inne with felle; of þe best,  
Alle of ermyn in erde, his hode of þe same;  
& he sete in þat settel semlych ryche,  
& achaufed hym chefly,<sup>3</sup> & þenne his cher mended.
- A table is soon  
raised,  
and the knight,  
having washed,  
proceeded to  
meat.
- 884 Sone wat; telded vp a tapit, on treste; ful fayre,  
Clad wyth a clene cloþe, þat cler quyt schewed,  
Sanap, & salure, & syluer-in spones;  
þe wyȝe wesche at his wylle, & went to his mete.
- [Fol. 103.]
- 888 Segge; hym serued semly in-noȝe,  
Wyth sere sewes & sete,<sup>4</sup> sesounde of þe best,
- He is served with  
numerous dishes;

<sup>1</sup> hym (?).<sup>2</sup> hyn, in MS.<sup>3</sup> ceffy, in MS.<sup>4</sup> swete (?).

- Double felde, as hit falleþ, & fele kyn fischeþ;  
 Summe baken in bred, summe brad on þe gledeþ,  
 892 Summe soþen, summe in sewe, sauered with spyces,  
 & ay sawes<sup>1</sup> so sleþeþ, þat þe segge lyked.  
 þe freke calde hit a fest ful frely & ofte,  
 Ful hendely, quen alle þe hapeles re-hayted hym at oneþ; He calls it a full  
 896 as hende; noble feast,  
 " þis penaunce now þe take,  
 & eft hit schal amende;"  
 þat mon much mæþe con make,  
 900 For wyn in his hed þat wende.

with fish baked  
and broiled,  
or boiled and sea-  
soned with spices.

He calls it a full  
noble feast,

and much mirth  
he makes, for the  
wine is in his  
head.

## XVII.

- þenne watþ spyed & spured vpon spare wyse,  
 Bi preue poynteþ of þat prynce, put to hym-seluen,  
 þat he be-knew cortaysly of þe court þat he were,  
 904 þat aþel Arthure þe hende haldeþ hym one,  
 þat is þe ryche ryal kyng of þe rounde table;  
 & hit watþ Wawen hym-self þat in þat won sytteþ,  
 Comen to þat krystmasse, as case hym þen lymped.  
 908 When þe lorde hade lerned þat he þe leude hade,  
 Loude laþed he þerat, so lef hit hym þoþt,  
 & alle þe men in þat mote maden much joye,  
 To apere in his presense prestly þat tyme,  
 912 þat alle prys, & prowes, & pured þewes  
 Apendes to hys persoun, & praysed is euer,  
 Byfore alle men vpon molde, his mensk is þe most.  
 Vch segge ful softly sayde to his fere,  
 916 " Now schal we semlych se sleþeþ of þeweþ,  
 & þe teccheles termes of talkyng noble,  
 Wich spede is in speche, vnspurd may we lerne,  
 Syn we haf fonged þat fyne fader of nurture;  
 920 God hatþ geuen vs his grace godly for soþe,  
 þat such a gest as Gawan graunteþ vs to haue,

Sir Gawayne, in  
answer to ques-  
tions put to him,

tells the prince  
that he is of  
Arthur's court.

When this was  
made known,

great was the joy  
in the hall.

Each one said  
softly to his mate,  
" Now we shall  
see courteous  
manners and hear  
noble speech,

for we have  
amongst us the  
' father of nur-  
ture.'

<sup>1</sup> sewes (?).

When burne; blyþe of his burþe schal sitte  
& syng.

- 924 In menyng of manere; mere,  
þis burne now schal *us* bryng,  
I hope þat may hym here,  
Schal lerne of luf-talkyng."

[Fol. 103b.]

He that may him  
hears hall learn of  
love-talking."

### XVIII.

- After dinner the 928 Bi þat þe diner wat; done, & þe dere vp,  
company go to  
the Chapel,  
Hit wat; ne; at þe nyȝt neȝed þe tyme;  
Chaplayne; to þe chapeles chosen þe gate,  
Rungen ful rycheȝ, ryȝt as þay schulden,  
to hear the even- 932 To þe hersum euensong of þe hyȝe tyde.  
song of the great  
season.  
þe lorde koutes þerto, & þe lady als,  
In-to a comly closet coyntly ho entreȝ;  
Gawan glyde; ful gay, & gos þeder sone;  
936 þe lorde laches hym by þe lappe, & lede; hym to sytte,  
& couȝly hym knowe; & calle; hym his nome,  
& sayde he wat; þe welcomest wyȝe of þe worlde;  
& he hym þonkked þroȝly, & ayȝer halched oȝer,  
The lord of the 940 & seten soberly, samen þe seruise-quyle;  
castle and Sir  
Gawayne sit to-  
gether during  
service.  
þenne lyst þe lady to loke on þe knyȝt;  
þenne com ho of hir closet, with mony cler burdeȝ,  
His wife, accom-  
panied by her  
maids, leaves her  
seat.  
Ho wat; þe fayrest in felle, of flesche & of lyn;  
She appeared 944 & of compas, & colour, & costes of alle oȝer,  
even fairer than  
Guenever.  
& wener þen Wenore, as þe wyȝe þoȝt.  
He ches þur; þe chaunsel, to cheryche þat hende;  
An oȝer lady hir lad bi þe lyft honde,  
An older lady (an 948 þat wat; alder þen hp, an auncian hit semed,  
ancient one she  
seemed) led her  
by the hand.  
& heȝly honowred with hapeles aboute.  
Bot vn-lyke on to loke þo ladyes were,  
Very unlike were 952 Riche red on þat on rayled ay quere,  
these two.  
Rugh renkled chekeȝ þat oȝer on rolled;  
If the young one  
was fair the other  
was yellow,  
Kerchofes of þat on wyth mony cler perleȝ;  
and had rough  
and wrinkled  
cheeks.  
Hir brest & hir bryȝt prote bare displayed,  
The younger had  
breast and throat

- 956 Schon schyrer þen snawe, þat scheder<sup>1</sup> on hille;      "bare display-  
 þat oþer wyth a gérger wat; gered ouer þe swyre,      ed."  
 Chympled ouer hir blake chyn with mylk-quyte vayles,  
 Hir frount folden in sylk, enfoubled ay quere,  
 960 Toret & treleted<sup>2</sup> with tryfle; aboute,  
 þat noȝt wat; bare of þat burde bot þe blake broȝes,  
 þe tweyne yȝen, & þe nase, þe naked lyppeȝ,  
 & þose were sours to se, & sellyly blered;  
 964 A mensk lady on molde mon may hir calle,  
 for gode;  
 Hir body wat; schort & pik,  
 Hir buttokeȝ bay & brode,  
 968 More lykker-wys on to lyk,  
 Wat; þat scho hade on lode.

The ancient one  
 exposed only her  
 "black brows,"  
 [Fol. 104.]  
 her two eyes,  
 nose, and naked  
 lips, all sour and  
 bleared.

Her body was  
 short and thick;  
 her buttocks  
 broad and round.

## XIX.

- When Gawayn glyt on þat gay, þat graciously loked,  
 Wyth leue last of þe lorde he went hem aȝaynes;  
 972 þe alder he haylses, heldande ful lowe,  
 þe loueloker he lappeȝ a lyttel in armeȝ,  
 He kysses hir comlyly, & knyȝtly he meleȝ;  
 pay kallen hym of a quoyntaunce, & he hit quyk askeȝ  
 976 To be her seruauȝt sothly, if hem-self lyked.  
 pay tan hym bytwene hem, wyth talkyng hym leden  
 To chambre, to chemné, & chefly þay asken  
 Spyceȝ, þat vnsparely men speded hom to bryng,  
 980 & þe wyne-lych wyne þer-with vche tyme.  
 þe lorde luflych aloft lepeȝ ful ofte,  
 Mynned merthe to be made vpon mony syȝeȝ.  
 Hent hefly of his hode, & on a spere hinged,  
 984 & wayned hom to wyne þe worchip þer-of,  
 þat most myrþe myȝt mene<sup>3</sup> þat crystenmas whyle;  
 " & I schal fonde, bi my fayth, to fylter wyth þe best,  
 Er me wont þe wedeȝ, with help of my frendeȝ."

With permission  
 of the lord,

Sir Gawayne sa-  
 lutes the elder,

but the younger  
 he kisses,

and begs to be  
 her servant.

To chamber all  
 go,

where spices and  
 wine are served.

The lord takes off  
 his hood and  
 places it on a  
 spear.

He who makes  
 most mirth is to  
 win it.

<sup>1</sup> schedes (?).<sup>2</sup> treieted (?).<sup>3</sup> meue (?).

Night approach-  
es, and then

988 þus wyth laꝛande lote; þe lorde hit tayt<sup>1</sup> make,  
For to glade syr Gawayn with gomne; in halle  
þat nyȝt;

Sir Gawayne  
takes his leave  
and retires to  
rest.

Til þat hit wat; tyme,  
992 þe kyng comaundet lyȝt,  
Syr Gawen his leue con nyne,  
& to his bed hym diȝt.

## XX.

On Christmas  
morn,  
joy reigns in  
every dwelling in  
the world.  
So did it in the  
castle where our  
knight abode.  
[Fol. 104b.]

On þe morne, as vch mon myne; þat tyme,  
996 þat dryȝtyn for oure destyné to deȝe wat; borne,  
Wefe waxe; in vche a won in worlde, for his sake;  
So did hit þere on þat day, þurȝ dayntes mony;  
Boȝe at mes & at mele, messes ful quaynt  
1000 Derf men vpon dece drest of þe best.

The lord and "the  
old ancient wife"  
sit together.

Gawayne sits by  
the wife of his  
host.

þe olde sunȝian wyf heȝest ho sytte;  
þe lorde lufy her by tent, as I trowe;  
Gawan & þe gay burde to-geder þay, seten,  
1004 Euen in-myddes, as þe messe metely come;  
& syȝen þurȝ al þe sale, as hem best, semed,  
Bi vche gromie at his degre graybely wat; serued.  
þer wat; mete, þer wat; myrke, þer wat; much ioȝe,  
1008 þat for to telle þerof hit me tene were,  
& to poynte hit ȝet I pynd me peraventure;

It were too tedi-  
ous to tell of the  
meat, the mirth,  
or the joy that  
abounded every-  
where.

Gawayne and his  
beautiful com-  
panion derive  
much comfort  
from each other's  
conversation.

Bot ȝet I wot þat Wawen & þe wale burde  
Such comfort of her compaynye casten to-geder,  
1012 þurȝ her dery dalyaunce of her derne wordes,  
Wyth clene cortays carp, closed fro fylþe;  
& hor play wat; passande vche prynce gomen,  
in vayres;

Trumpets and  
nakers give forth  
their sounds.

1016 Trumpes & nakerys,  
Much pypynȝ þer repayres,  
Vche mon tented hys,  
& þay two tented þayres.

<sup>1</sup> layt (?).

## XXI.

- 1020 Much dut wat; þer dryuen <sup>to here</sup> þat day & þat oþer,  
 & þe þryd as þro þronge in þerafter;  
 þe soye of sayn[t] <sup>to here</sup> þone day wat; gentyle to here,  
 & wat; þe last of þe layk, leude; þer þo;ten.
- 1024 þer wer gestes to go vpon þe gray morne,  
 For-þy wonderly, þay woke, & þe wyn dronken,  
 Daunsed ful <sup>to here</sup> frely wyth dere carole;,  
 At þe last, when hit wat; late, þay lachen her, leue,
- 1028 Vchon to wende on his way, þat wat; wy;e stronge.  
 Gawan gef hym god-day, þe god mon hym lachche;,  
 Ledes hym to his awen chambre, þe chymné bysyde,  
 & þere he dra;e; hym on-dry;e, & derely hym þonkke;,  
 Of þe wyne worschip &<sup>1</sup> he hym wayned hade,
- 1032 As to honour his <sup>to here</sup> houe on þat hy;e tyde,  
 & enbelyse his bur; with his <sup>to here</sup> þeþe chere.  
 "I-wysse syr, quyl I leue, me worþe; þe better,
- 1036 þat Gawayn hat; ben my gest, at godde; awen fest." [Fol. 105.]  
 "Grant merci<sup>2</sup> syr," quoth Gawayn, "in god fayth  
 hit is yowre;,  
 Al þe honour is your awen, þe he;e kyng yow þelde;  
 & I am wy;e at your wylle, to worch youre hest,
- 1040 As I am halden þer-to, in hy;e & in lo;e,  
 bi ri;t."  
 þe-lorde fast can hym payne,  
 To holde lenger þe kny;t,
- 1044 To hym answe;e; Gawayn,  
 Bi non way þat he my;t.

Great was the joy  
for three days.

St. John's-day  
was the last of  
Christmas fes-  
tival.

On the morrow  
many of the  
guests took their  
departure from  
the castle.

Sir Gawayne is  
thanked by his  
host for the hon-  
our and pleasure  
of his visit.

He endeavours to  
keep the knight  
at his court.

## XXII.

- Then <sup>acted</sup> frayed, þe freke ful fayre at him-seluen,  
 Quat derne<sup>3</sup> dede had hym dryuen, at þat dere tyme,
- 1048 So kenly fro þe kyng;e; kourt, to kaire al his one,  
 Er þe halidaye; holly were halet out of toun?

He desires to  
know what had  
driven Sir Ga-  
wayne from Ar-  
thur's court be-  
fore the end of  
the Christmas  
holidays.

<sup>1</sup> þat (þ).<sup>2</sup> merci, in MS.<sup>3</sup> derue (þ).

The knight replies that "a high errand and a hasty one" had forced him to leave the court.

"For soþe *syr*," *quoth* þe segge, "þe sayn bot þe trawþe;  
A heþe ernde & a hasty me hade fro þe woneþ,  
1052 For I am *spurned* my selfe to sech to a place,  
I wot in worlde wheder warde to wende, hit to fynde;  
I nolde, bot if I hit negh myt on nwæres morne,  
For alle þe longe in-wyth Logres, so me oure lorde help!

He asks his host whether he has ever heard of the Green Chapel,

1056 For þy, *syr*, þis enquest I require yow here,  
þat þe me telle with trawthe, if euer þe tale herde  
Of þe grene chapel, quere hit on grounde stondeþ,  
& of þe knyht þat hit kepes, of colour of grene?

for he has to be there on New Year's-day.

1060 þer wat; stabled bi statut a steuen *was* by-twene,  
To mete þat mon at þat mere, if I myt last;  
& of þat ilk nwære bot neked now wonteþ,  
& I wolde loken on þat lede, if god me let wolde,

He would as lief die as fail in his errand.

1064 Gladloker, bi godde; sun, þen any god welde  
For bi, I-wysse, bi þowre wyll, wende me bi-houes,  
Naf I now to busy bot bare þre dayeþ,  
& me als fayn to falle feye as fayly of myyn ernde."

The prince tells Sir Gawayne that he will teach him the way.

1068 þenne laþande *quoth* þe lorde, "now leng þe by-houes,  
For I schal teche yow to þa[t] terme bi þe tyme; ende,  
þe grene chapayle vpon grounde, greþe yow no more;  
Bot þe schal be in yowre bed, burne, at þyn ese,

[Fol. 105b.]

1072 Quyle forth dayeþ, & ferk on þe fyrst of þe þere,  
& cum to þat merk at mydmorn, to make quat yow like;  
in spenne;

The Green Chapel is not more than two miles from the castle.

1076 Dowelle; whyle new þeres daye,  
& rys, & rayke; þenne,  
Mon schal yow sette in waye,  
Hit is not two myle henne."

Then was Gawayne glad,

1080 þenne wat; Gawan ful glad, & gomenly he laþed,—  
"Now I þonk yow þryuandely þur; alle oþer þynge,  
Now acheued is my chaunce, I schal at your wyll  
Dowelle, & elle; do quat þe demen."

and consents to tarry awhile at the castle.

### XXIII.

- penne sesed hym be syre, & set hym bysyde,  
 1084 Let þe ladies be sette, to lyke hem þe better ;  
 þer wat; seme solace by hem-self stille ;  
 þe lorde let for luf lote; so myry,  
 As wy; þat wolde of his wyte, ne wylt quat he myt.  
 1088 þenne he carped to þe knyȝt, criande loude,  
 "þe han demed to do þe dede þat I bidde ;  
 Wyl þe halde þis hes[t] here at þys one; ?"  
 "þe syr, for-soþe," sayd þe segge trwe,  
 1092 "Whyl I byde in yowre borȝe, be bayn to þow[r]e  
 hest."  
 "For þe haf traȝayled," quoth þe tulk, "towen fro ferre,  
 & syþen waked me wyth, þe arn not wel waryst,  
 Nauȝer of sustnaunce ne of slepe, soþly I knowe;  
 1096 þe schal lenge in your loft, & lyȝe in your ese,  
 To morn quyle þe messe-quyle, & to mete wende,  
 When þe wyl, wyth my wyf, þat wyth yow schal sitte,  
 & comfort yow with compayny, til I to cort torne,  
 1100 þe lende;  
 & I schal erly ryse,  
 On huntyng wyl I wende."  
 Gauayn grante; alle þyse,  
 1104 Hym heldande, as þe hende.

The ladies are brought in to solace him.

The lord of the castle asks the knight to grant him one request ;

That he will stay in his chamber during mass time,

and then go to meat with his hostess.

Gawayne accedes to his request.

## XXIV.

- "þet firre," quoth þe freke, "a forwarde we make;  
 Quat-so-euer I wyne in þe wod, hit worþe; to youre;  
 & quat chek so þe acheue, chaunge me þer-forne;  
 1108 Swete, swap we so, sware with trawþe,  
 Queþor, leude, so lymþ lere oþer better."  
 "Bi god," quoth Gawayn þe gode, "I grant þer-tyllé,  
 & þat yow lyst for to layke, lef hit me þynke."  
 1112 "Who brynge; vus þis beuerage, þis bargayn is  
 maked:"  
 So sayde þe lorde of þat lede; þay layed vchone,

"Whatsoever," says the host, "I win in the wood shall be yours, and what check you achieve shall be mine."

[Fol. 106.]

A bargain is made between them.



## PREPARATIONS FOR THE CHASE.

Night approaches  
and each "to his  
bed was brought  
at the last."

- pay dronken, & daylyeden, & dalten vnty<sup>1</sup>tel,  
pise lorde; and ladye; quyle þat hem lyked;  
1116 & syþen with frenkysch fare & fele fayre lōte;  
þay stoden, & stemed, & stilly speken,  
Kysten ful comlyly, & kysten her leue.  
With mony leude ful lyȝt, & lemande torches,  
1120 Vche burne to his bed wat; broȝt at þe laste,  
ful softe;  
To bed ȝet er þay ȝede,  
Recorded cōvenaunte; ofte;  
1124 þe olde lorde of þat leude,<sup>2</sup>  
Cowþe wel halde layk a-lofte.

## [FYTTE THE THIRD.]

## I.

Before day-break  
folks uprise,

saddle their  
horses, and truss  
their mails.

Each goes where  
it pleases him  
best.  
The noble lord  
of the land ar-  
rays himself for  
riding.  
He ents a sop  
hastily and goes  
to mass.

Before day-light  
he and his men  
are on their  
horses.  
Then the hounds  
are called out and  
coupled.

Three short notes  
are blown by the  
bugles.

- FUL erly bifore þe day þe folk vp-rysen,  
Gestes þat go wolde, hor grōme; þay calden,  
1128 & þay busken vp bilyue, blonkke; to sadel,  
Tyffen he[r] takles, trussen her males,  
Richen hem þe rychest, to ryde alle arayde,  
Lepen vp lyȝtly, lachen her brydeles,  
1132 Vche wyȝe on his way, þer hym wel lyked.  
þe-leue lorde of þe londe wat; not þe last,  
A-rayed for þe rydyng, with renkke; ful mony;  
Ete a sop hastily, when he hade herde masse,  
1136 With bugle to bent felde he buske; by-lyue;  
By þat þat any day-lyȝt lemed vpon erþe,  
He with his hāþeles on hyȝe horsses werē.  
þenne pise cacheres þat cōuþe, cowpled hor hounde;,  
1140 Vnclosed þe kenel dore, & calde hem þer-oute,  
Blwe byȝly in bugle; þre bare mote;  
Braches bayed þerfore, & breme noyse maked,

<sup>1</sup> vntyl nyȝte (?).

<sup>2</sup> lede (?).

& þay chastysed, & charred, on chasyng þat went;

A hundred  
hunters join in  
the chase.

1144 A hundreth of hunteres, as I haf herde telle,

*of þe best;*  
To trystors vewters 30d,  
Couples huntres of kest,

To the stations  
the "fewters"  
go,

1148 þer ros for blaste; gode,  
Gret rurd in þat forest.

[Fol. 106b.]  
and the dogs are  
cast off.

## II.

At þe fyrst quethe of þe quest quaked þe wylde;

Der drof in þe dale, doted for drede,

Roused by the  
clamour the deer  
rush to the  
heights,

1152 Hized to þe hye, bot þeterly þay were

Restayed with þe stablye, þat stoutly ascryed;

but are soon  
driven back.

þay let þe hertte; haf þe gate, with þe hye hedes,  
þe breme bukke; also, with hor brode paume;

The male deer  
and bucks are  
allowed to pass,

1156 For þe fre lorde hade defende in fermysoun tyme,

þat þer schulde no mon mene<sup>1</sup> to þe male dere.

þe hinde; were halden in, with hay & war,

þe does dryuen with gret dyn to þe depe slade;

but the hinds and  
does are driven  
back to the  
shades.

1160 þer myȝt mon se, as þay slypte, slentyng of arwes,

At xche [þat] wende vnder wande wapped a flone,

þat bigly bote on þe broun, with ful brode hede;

As they fly they  
are shot by the  
bowmen.

What! þay brayen, & bleden, bi bonkke; þay deȝen.

1164 & ay rachches in a res radly hem folȝes,

Huntere; wyth hye horne hasted hem after,

Wyth such a crakkande kry, as klyffes haden brusten;

The hounds and  
the hunters, with  
a loud cry, follow  
in pursuit.

What wylde so at-waped wyȝes þat schotten,

1168 Wat; al to-raced & rent, at þe resayt.

Bi þay were tened at þe hye, and taysed to þe wattre;

þe lede; were so lerned at þe loȝe trysteres,

& þe gre-hounde; so grete, þat geten hem bylyue,

Those that es-  
caped the arrows  
are killed by the  
hounds.

1172 & hem to fylched, as fast as freke; myȝt loke,

þer ryȝt.

þe lorde for blys abloy

Ful oft con launce & lyȝt,

The lord waxes  
joyful in the  
chase,

<sup>1</sup> meue?

which lasted till 1176  
the approach of  
night.

& drof þat day wyth Ioy.  
Thus to þe derk nyȝt.

## III.

All this time Ga-  
wayne lies a-bed,

under "cover-  
ture full clear."

He hears a noise  
at his door.

[Fol. 107.]

A lady, the love-  
liest to behold,  
enters softly.

She approaches  
the bed.

Gawayne pre-  
tends to be asleep.

The lady casts up  
the curtain and  
sits on the bed-  
side.

Gawayne has  
much wonder  
thereat.

He rouses him-  
self up,

unlocks his eyes,  
and looks as if he  
were astonished.

- þus layke; þis lorde by lynde wode; ene;  
& G. þe god mon, in gay bed lyge;  
1180 Lurkke; quyl þe day-lyȝt lemed on þe woves,  
Vnder couertour ful clere, cortyned aboute;  
& as in slomeryng he slode, sleȝly he herde  
A littel dyn at his dor, & derfly vpon;  
1184 & he heue; vp his hed out of þe cloþes,  
A corner of þe cortyn he caȝt vp a lyttel,  
& wayte; warly þider-warde, quat hit be myȝt.  
Hit wat; þe ladi, loflyest to be-holde,  
1188 þat dro; þe dor after hir ful dernly<sup>1</sup> & styлле,  
& boȝed to-warde þe bed; & þe burne schamed,  
& layde hym douȝtlystyly, & let as he slepte.  
& ho stepped stilly, & stel to his bedde,  
1192 Kest vp þe cortyn, & creped with-inne,  
& set hir ful softly on þe bed-syde,  
& lenged þere selly longe, to loke quen he wakened.  
þe lode lay, lurked a ful longe quyle,  
1196 Compast in his concience to quat þat cace myȝt  
Mene oȝer amount, to meruayle hym þoȝt;  
Bot ȝet he sayde in hym-self, "more semly hit were  
To aspye wyth my spelle [in] space quat ho wolde."  
1200 þen he wakenede, & wroth, & to hir warde torned,  
& vn-douked his ȝe-lydde; & let as hym wondered,  
& sayned hym, as bi his saȝe þe sader to worthe,  
with hande;  
1204 Wyth chyȝne & cheke ful swete,  
Boȝe quit & red in-blande,  
Ful luffly con ho lete,  
Wyth lyppe; smal laȝande.

<sup>1</sup> deruly (?).

## IV.

- 1208 "God moroun, *syr* Gawayn," sayde þat fayr lady,  
 "ȝe ar a sleper vn-slyȝe, þat mon may slyde hider;  
 Now ar ȝe tan astyt, bot true *us* may schape,  
 I schal bynde yow in your bedde, þat be ȝe trayst:"
- 1212 Al laȝande þe lady lanced þo bourdeȝ.  
 "Goud moroun gaye,"<sup>1</sup> quoth Gawayn þe blyȝe,  
 "Me schal ~~werbe~~ *at your wille*, & þat me wel lykeȝ,  
 For I ȝelde me ~~ȝederly~~, & ȝe after *grace*,"
- 1216 & þat is þe best, þe my dome, for me by-houeȝ nedeȝ;  
 & þus he bourded a-ȝayn with mony a blyȝe laȝter.  
 "Bot wolde ȝe, lady louely, þen leue me grante,  
 & deprece *your prysoun*,<sup>2</sup> & pray hym to ryse,
- 1220 I wolde boȝe of þis bed, & busk me better,  
 I schulde keuer þe more comfort to karp yow wyth."  
 "Nay, for soȝe, beau *syr*," sayd þat swete,  
 "ȝe schal not rise of *your* bedde, I rych yow better,
- 1224 I schal happe yow here þat oȝer half als,  
 & syȝen karp wyth my knyȝt þat I kaȝt haue;  
 For I wene wel, I-wysse, *syr* Wawen ȝe are,  
 þat alle þe worlde worchipeȝ, quere-so ȝe ride;
- 1228 *Your* honour, *your* hendelayk is hendely praysed  
 With lordeȝ, wyth ladyes, with alle þat lyf bere.  
 & now ȝe ar here, I-wysse, and we bot oure one;  
 My lorde & his ledeȝ ar on tenȝe faren,
- 1232 Oȝer burneȝ in her bedde, & my burdeȝ als,  
 þe dor drawen, & dit with a derf haspe;  
 & syȝen I haue in þis hous hym þat al lykeȝ,  
 I schal ware my whyle wel, quyl hit lasteȝ,
- 1236 with tale;  
 ȝe ar welcum to my cors,  
 Yowre awen won to wale,  
 Me be-houeȝ of fyne force,  
*Your seruau*nt be & schale."

"Good morrow," says the lady, "ye are a careless sleeper to let one enter thus."

I shall bind you in your bed, of that be ye sure."

"Good morrow," says the knight, "I am well pleased to be at your service;

but permit me to rise and dress myself."

[Fol. 107b.]

"Nay, beau sir," said that sweet one,

"I shall hold talk with you here."

I know well that you are Gawayne that all the world worships.

We are by ourselves;

My lord and his men are far off. Other men are in their beds, so are my maidens. The door is safely closed. Since I have him in house that everyone likes, I shall use my time well while it lasts.

Ye are welcome to my body.

I shall be your servant."

<sup>1</sup> This word is doubtful in the MS.

<sup>2</sup> prysouner (?).

## V.

"I am unworthy," says Sir Gawayne, "to reach to such reverence as ye rehearse.

I shall be glad, however, to please you by word or service."

"There are ladies," says his visitor, "who would prefer thy company

to much of the gold that they possess."

The knight answers the lady's questions.

- "In god fayth," quoth Gawayn, <sup>a great shame</sup> "gayn hit me þynkke;  
 þa; I be not now he þat ȝe of spoken;  
 To reche to such reuerence as ȝe reherce here  
 1244 I am wyȝe vn-worthy, I wot wel my-seluen;  
 Bi god, I were glad, & yow god þoȝt,  
 At saȝe oþer at seruyce þat I sette myȝt  
 To þe plesaunce of your prys, hit were a pure ioye."  
 1248 "In god fayth, syr Gawayn," quoth þe gay lady,  
 "þe prys & þe prowes þat pleaseȝ al oþer,  
 If I hit lakked, oþer set at lyȝt, hit were littel daynté;  
 Bot hit ar ladyes in-noȝe, þat leuer wer nowþe  
 1252 Haf þe hende in hor holde, as I þe habbe here,  
 To daly with derely your daynté wordeȝ,  
 Keuer hem comfort, & colen her careȝ,  
 Þen much of þe garysoun oþer golde þat<sup>1</sup> þay hauen;  
 1256 Bot I loune<sup>2</sup> þat ilk lorde þat þe lyfte haldeȝ,  
 I haf hit holly in my honde þat al desyres,  
 þurȝe grace."

[Fol. 106.] 1260

Scho made hym so gret chereȝ,  
 þat watȝ so fayr of face,  
 þe knyȝt with speches skere,  
 A[n]swared to vche a caȝe.

## VI.

Gawayne tells her that he prefers her conversation before that of all others.

The lady declares by Mary,

that were she about to choose her a lord,

- "Madame," quoth þe myry mon, <sup>referred</sup> "Mary yow zelde,  
 1264 For I haf founden, in god fayth, yowre fraunchis nobele,  
 & oþer ful much of oþer folk fongen hor dedeȝ;  
 Bot þe daynté þat þay delen for my disert nyȝen,  
 Hit is þe worchyp of your-self, þat noȝt bot wel conneȝ."  
 1268 "Bi Mary," quoth þe menskful, "me þynk hit anoþer;  
 For were I worth al þe wone of wymmen alȝye,  
 & al þe wele of þe worlde were in my honde,  
 & I schulde chepen & chose, to cheue me a lorde,

<sup>1</sup> þat þat, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> louie or loune (?).

- 1272 For þe <sup>goostly</sup> costes þat I haf knowen vpon þe knyȝt here,  
 Of bewté, & debonerté, & blyþe semblaunt,  
 & þat I haf er herkkened, & halde hit here trwee,  
 þer schulde no freke vpon folde bifore yow be chosen.”
- 1276 “I-wysse, worþy,” quoth þe wyȝe, “ȝe haf waled wel  
 better,  
 Bot I am proude of þe prys þat ȝe put on me,  
 & soberly your seruauȝt my souerayn I holde yow,  
 & yowre knyȝt I be-com, & kryst yow for-ȝelde.”
- 1280 þus þay meled of much-quat, til myd-morn paste,  
 & ay þe lady let lyk, aȝ hym loued myȝh;  
 þe freke ferde with defence, and feted ful fayre.  
 þaȝ I were burde bryȝtest, þe burde in mynde hade,
- 1284 þe lāsse luf in his lode, for fur þat he soȝt,  
 boutte hone;  
 þe dunte þat schulde<sup>2</sup> hym deue,  
 & nedeȝ hit most be doneȝ;
- 1288 þe lady þenn spek of leue,  
 He granted hir ful sone.

she would select  
Gawayne before  
any man on earth.

Gawayne tells  
her that he will  
become her own  
knight and faith-  
ful servant.

The remem-  
brance of his ad-  
venture prevents  
him from think-  
ing of love.

The lady takes  
leave of Sir Ga-  
wayne.

## VII.

- þenne ho gef hym god-day, & wyth a glent layed,  
 & as ho stod, ho stonyed hym wyth ful stor wordeȝ:
- 1292 “Now he þat spedeȝ vche spech, þis disport ȝelde yow!  
 Bot þat ȝe be Gawan, hit gotȝ in mynde,”  
 “Quer-fore?” quoth þe freke, & freschly he askeȝ,  
 Ferde lest he hade fayled in fourme of his castes;
- 1296 Bot þe burde hym blessed, & bi þis skyl sayde,  
 “So god as Gawayn gaynly is halden,  
 & cortaysye is closed so clene in hym-seluen,  
 Couth not lyȝtly haf lenged so long wyth a lady,
- 1300 Bot he had craved a cosse, bi his courtaysye,  
 Bi sum towch of summe tryfle, at sum taleȝ ende.”  
 þen quoth Woven, “I-wysse, worþe as yow lykeȝ,

With a laughing  
glance, she says,

“I am doubtful  
whether ye be  
Gawayne.

[Fol. 108b.]

Were it he,  
surely, ere this,  
he would have  
craved a kiss.”

“I shall kiss,”  
says the knight,

<sup>1</sup> ande (?).

<sup>2</sup> schulde, in MS.

"at your com-  
mandment."

With that the  
lady catches him  
in her arms and  
kisses him.

Gawayne then  
rises and goes to  
mass.

He makes mirth  
all day till the  
moon rises,

between the "two  
dames," the older  
and the younger.

Meanwhile the  
lord of the land  
and his men hunt  
in woods and  
heaths.

Quickly of the  
killed a "quarry"  
they make.

Then they set  
about breaking  
the deer.

They take away  
the assay or fat,

then they slit the  
slot and remove  
the erber.

They afterwards  
rip the four limbs  
and rend off the  
hide.

They next open  
the belly and take  
out the bowels.

[Fol. 109.]

I schal kysse at your comaundement, as a knyȝt falleȝ,  
1304 & <sup>here</sup> lest he displese yow, so<sup>2</sup> plede hit no more."

Ho comes nerre with þat, & cacheȝ hym in armeȝ,  
Louteȝ laȝȝych adoun, & þe leude kysseȝ;  
þay comly bykennen to kryst ayȝer oȝer;

1308 Ho dos hir forth at þe dore, with-uten dyn more.

& he ryches hym to ryse, & rapes hym sone,  
Clepes to his chamberlayn, chosens his wede,  
Boȝeȝ forth, quen he watȝ bouȝ, blyþely to masse,

1312 & þenne he mowed to his mete, þat menskly hym keped,  
& made myry al day til þe mone ryssed,

with game;  
With<sup>3</sup> neuer freke fayrer fonge,

1316 Bitwene two so dyȝne dame,

þe alder & þe ȝonge,

Much solace set þay same.

# VIII.

And ay þe lordȝ of þe londe is lent on his gamneȝ,  
1320 To hunt in holteȝ & heȝe, at hyndeȝ barayne,  
Such a sowme he þer slowe bi þat þe sunne heldet,  
Of doȝ & of oȝer dore, to deme were wonder.

þenne fersly þay flokked in folk at þe laste,  
& quykly of þe quelled dore a querrȝ þay maked;  
þe best boȝed þerto, with burneȝ in-noghe,

Gedered þe grattest of gres þat þer were,  
& didden hem derely vndo, as þe dede askeȝ;

1328 Serched hem at þe asay, summe þat þer were,  
Two fyngeres þay fonde of þe fowlest of alle;

Syȝen þay slȝt þe slot, sesed þe erber,  
Schaueȝ wyth a scharp knyȝf, & þe schyre knitten;

1332 Syȝen rytte þay þe foure lymmes, & rent of þe hyde,

þen brek þay þe bale, þe baleȝ out token,

Lystily forlancyȝ, & bere of þe knot;

<sup>1</sup> fere (?).

<sup>2</sup> fo, in MS.

<sup>3</sup> Was (?) Nas (?).

- pay gryped to þe gargulun, & graybely departed  
 1336 þe wesaunt fro þe wynt-hole, & walt out þe gutte; ;  
 þen scher þay out þe schuldere; with her scharp knyue;,  
 Haled hem by a lyttel hole, to hawe hole sydes;  
 Syþen brithed þay þe brest, & brayden hit in twynne,  
 1340 & eft at þe gargulun bigyne; on þenne,  
 Ryue; hit vp radly, ryt to þe byt;  
 Voyde; out þe a-vanters, & verayly þer-after  
 Alle þe tyme; by þe rybbe; radly þay lance; ;  
 1344 So ryde þay of by resoun bi þe rygge bone;,  
 Emden to þe haunche, þat hinged alle samen,  
 & heuen hit vp al hole, & hwen hit of þere,  
 & þat þay neme for þe noumbles, bi nome as I trowe,  
 1348 bi kynde;  
 Bi þe byt al of þe þyres,  
 þe lappe; þay lance bi-hynde,  
 To hewe hit in two þay hyres,  
 1352 Bi þe bak-bon to vnbynde.

They then separate the *weasand* from the wind-hole and throw out the guts.

The shoulders are cut out, and the breast divided in halves.

The *noumbles* are next removed.

By the fork of the thighs,

the flaps are hewn in two by the backbone.

## IX.

- Boþe þe hede & þe hals þay hwen of þenne,  
 & syþen sunder þay þe syde; swyft fro þe chyne,  
 & þe corbeles fee þay kest in a greue;  
 1356 þenn þurled þay ayþer þik side þur; bi þe rybbe,  
 & hinged þenne a[y]þer bi ho;es of þe fourche;,  
 Vche freke for his fee, as falle; for to haue.  
 Vpon a felle of þe fayre best, fede þay þayr houndes,  
 1360 Wyth þe lyuer & þe l;te; þe leþer of þe paunche;,  
 & þred baid in blod, blende þer amonge; ;  
 Baldely þay blw þrys; bayed þayr rachte;,  
 Syþen fonge þay her flesche folden to home,  
 1364 Strakande ful stoutly mony stif mote;.  
 Bi þat þe dayly; wat; done, þe douth the wat; al wonen

After this the head and neck are cut off, and the sides severed from the chine.

With the liver, lights, and paunches, they feed the hounds.

Then they make for home.

<sup>1</sup> on a grene (?).



In-to þe comly castel, þer þe knyȝt bide;  
ful stille;

1368

Wyth blys & bryȝt fyr bette,  
þe lord is comen þer-tylle,  
When Gawayn wyth hym mette,  
þer wat; bot wele at wylle.

Gawayne goes  
out to meet his  
host.

## X.

[Fol. 109b.] 1372 Thenne comaunded þe lorde in þat sale to samen alle þe  
meny,

The lord com-  
mands all his  
household to as-  
semble,

and the venison  
to be brought be-  
fore him.  
He calls Ga-  
wayne,

1376

Boþe þe ladyes on loghe to lyȝt with her burdes,  
Bi-fore alle þe folk on þe flette, freke; he bedde;  
Verayly his venysoun to fech hym byforne;  
& al godly in gomen Gaway[n] he called,  
Teche; hym to þe tayles of ful tȝyt bestes,  
Schewe; hym þe schyree grece schorne vpon rybbes.

and asks him  
whether he does  
not deserve much  
praise for his suc-  
cess in the chase.

1380

“How paye; yow þis play? haf I prys wonnen?  
Haue I þrydely þonk þur; my craft serued?”  
“þe I-wysse,” quoth þat oþer wyȝe, “here is wayth  
fayrest

On the knight  
expressing him-  
self satisfied, he  
is told to take the  
whole according  
to a former agree-  
ment between  
them.

1384

þat I se; þis seuen ȝere in sesoun of wynter.”  
“& al I gif yow, Gawayn,” quoth þe gome þenne,  
“For by a-corde of couenauȝt þe craue hit as your  
awen.”

Gawayne gives  
the knight a  
comely kiss in  
return.

1388

“þis is soth,” quoth þe segge, “I say yow þat ilke,  
&<sup>1</sup> I haf worthyly þis wone; wyth-inne,  
I-wysse with as god wylle hit worþe; to ȝoure;.”  
He hasppe; his fayre hals his arme; wyth-inne,  
& kysses hym as comlyly as he<sup>2</sup> couþe awayse:  
“Tas yow þere my cheucaunce, I cheued no more,  
I wowche hit saf fynly; þa; feler hit were.”

1392

“Hit is god,” quoth þe god mon, “grant mercy þerfore,  
Hit may be such, hit is þe better, &<sup>1</sup> þe me þreue wolde  
Where þe wan þis ilk wele, by wytte of ho<sup>3</sup> seluen.”

His host desires  
to know where  
he had gotten  
such weal.

<sup>1</sup> And=an.<sup>2</sup> ho, in MS.<sup>3</sup> your?

"pat wat; not forward," quoth he, "frayst me no more,

1396 For þe haf tan þat yow tyde<sup>1</sup>, trawe þe non oþer

ze mowe.”

pay lazed, & made hem blype,

Wyth lote; þat were to lowe,

1400 To soþer þay ȝede asswyþe, .i.

Wyth dayntes nwe in-nowe.

As this does not enter into the covenant, he gets no answer to his question.

**They then proceed to supper, where were dainties new and enough.**

XI.

And syþen by þe chymné in chamber þay seten,

Wyze3 þe walle wyn wezed to hem qft,

1404 & eft in her bourdyng bay bayben in þe morn,

To fylle þe same forwarde; þat þay by-fore maden,

pat chaunce so by-tyde; hor cheuysaunce to chaunge,

What new<sup>er</sup> so pay none, at next<sup>st</sup> quen pay metten

1408 pay acorded of þe couenaunte; byfore þe court alle;

þe beuerage wat; broȝt forth in bourde at þat tyme;

penne þay louelych lesten leue at þe last,

Vche burne to his bedde busked bylyue.

1412 Bi þat þe çoke hade croue;<sup>1</sup> & cakled bot þryse,

pe lorde wat; lopen of his bedde, [ & ] pe leude; vch one,

So þat þe mete & þe masse, wat; metely delyuered;

þe douthe dressed to þe wod, er any day sprenged,

1416 to chace;

He, with hunte & horne,

þurʒ playnəʒ þay passe in space,

Vn-coupled among 10 borne3,

1420 Rache; bat ran on race.

By the hearth  
they sit.  
Wine is carried  
round.

**Again Sir Gawayne and his host renew their agreement.**

[Fol. 110.]

Then they take leave of each other and hasten to bed.

Scarce had the  
cock cackled  
thrice when the  
lord was up.

**With his hunters  
and horns they  
pursue the chase.**

## XII.

Sone þay calle of a quest in aker syde,

þe hunt re-hayted þe houndez, þat hit fyrst mynged,

Wylde worde; hym warp wyth a wrast noyce;

1424 þe hownde; þat hit herde, hastid þider swyþe,

The hunters  
cheer on the  
hounds,

which fall to the  
scent forty at  
once.

<sup>1</sup> crowed (?).

- & fallen as fast to þe fuyt, fourty at ones;  
 þenne such a glauerande glam of gedened rachche;  
 Ros, þat þe rochere; rungen aboute;  
 1428 Huntene; hem hardened with horne & wyth muthe.  
 þen al in a samblé, swayed to-geder,  
 Bitwene a flosche in þat fryth, & a foo cragge;  
 In a knot, bi a clyffe, at þe kerre syde,  
 1432 þer as þe rogh rocher vn-rydely wat; fallen,  
 þay ferden to þe fyndyng, & freke; hem after;  
 þay vmbe-kesten þe knarre & þe knot boþe,  
 Wy;e; whyl þay wysten wel wyt inne hem hit were,  
 1436 þe best þat þer breued wat; wyth þe blod hounde;  
 þenne þay beten on þe buske; & bede hym vp ryse,  
 & he vnsoundly out sojt segge; ouer-þwert,  
 On þe sellokest swyn swenged out þere,  
 1440 Long sythen for þe sounder þat wist for-olde,  
 For he wat; b[este] & bor alþer grattest,  
 [And en]ere quen he gromed, þenne greued mony,  
 For [þre a]t þe fyrst þrast he þryt to þe erbe,  
 1444 & sped [hym] forth good sped, boute spyt more,  
 Ande þay halowed hygh ful hye & hay! hay! cryed,  
 Haden horne; to mouþe hetyrly rechated;  
 Mony wat; þe myry mouthe of men & of hounde;  
 1448 þat buskke; after þis bor, with bost & wyth noyse,  
 to quelle;  
 Ful oft he byde; þe baye,  
 & mayme; þe mute lnn-melle,  
 1452 He hurte; of þe hounde; & þay  
 Ful þomerly þaule & þelle.
- All come to-  
 gether by the  
 side of a cliff.  
 They look about  
 on all sides,  
 and beat on the  
 bushes.  
 Out there rushes  
 a fierce wild boar.  
 At the first thrust,  
 he falls three to  
 the ground.  
 [Fol. 110b.]  
 Full quickly the  
 hunters pursue  
 him.  
 However, he at-  
 tacks the hounds  
 causing them to  
 yowl and yell.

## XIII.

The bowmen  
 send their arrows  
 after this wild  
 swine,

- Schalke; to schote at hym schowen to þenne,  
 Haled to hym of her arewe; hitten hym oft;  
 1456 Bot þe poynte; þayred at þe pyth þat pyt in his schelde;  
 & þe barbe; of his browe bite non wolde,

<sup>1</sup> fro (?).

- þa; þe schaven schaft schyndered in pece;,  
 þe hede hopped a;ayn, were-so-euer hit hitte ;  
 1460 Bot quen þe dýnted hym dered of her drye stroke;,  
 þen, brayn-wod for bate, on burne; he rase;,  
 Hurte; hem ful heterly þer he forth hye;,  
 & mony arjed þerat, & on-lyte drozen.  
 1464 Bot þe lorde on a lyt horce launces hym after,  
 As burne bolde vpon bent his bugle he blowe;,  
 He rechated, & r[ode]<sup>1</sup> þur; rone; ful þyk,  
 Suande þis wyld swyn til þe sunne schafed.  
 1468 þis day wyth þis ilk dede þay dryuen on þis wyse,  
 Whyle oure luflych lede lys in his þedde,  
 Gawayn grayþely at home, in gere; ful ryche  
 of hewe ;  
 1472 þe lady noȝt forȝate,  
 Com to hym to saluē,  
 Ful erly ho wat; hym ate,  
 His mode for to remwe.

but they glide off  
shivered in  
pieces.

Enraged with  
the blows,

he attacks the  
hunters.

The lord of the  
land blows his  
bugle,

and pursues the  
boar.

All this time Ga-  
wayne lies a bed.

## XIV.

- 1476 Ho commes to þe cortyn, & at þe knyȝt totes,  
 & Wawen her welcumed worþy on fyrst,  
 & ho hym ȝelde; a;ayn, ful ȝerne of hir worde;,  
 Sette; hir soff[t]ly by his syde, & swyþely ho laȝe;,  
 1480 & wyth a luflych loke ho layde<sup>2</sup> hym þese worde; :  
 "Syr, ȝif ȝe be Wawen, wonder me þynkke;,  
 Wyȝe þat is so wel wrast alway to god,  
 & conne; not of compaynye þe coste; vnder-take,  
 1484 & if mon kennes yow hom to knowe, ȝe kest hom of [Fol. 111.]  
 your mynde ;  
 þou hat; for-ȝeten ȝederly þat ȝisterday I taȝtte  
 Bi alder-truest token of talk þat I cowþe."  
 "What is þat?" quoth þe wyghe, "I-wysse I wot neuer,  
 1488 If hit be sothe þat ȝe breue; þe blame is myn awen."

The lady of the  
castle again visits  
Sir Gawayne.

Softly she sits by  
his side,

and tells the  
knight that he  
has forgotten  
what she taught  
him the day be-  
fore.

<sup>1</sup> The MS. is here almost illegible.

<sup>2</sup> sayde (?).

"I taught you of kissing," she says, "that becomes every knight."

Gawayne says that he must not take that which is forbidden.

He is told that he is strong enough to enforce it.

The knight replies that every gift is worthless that is not given willingly.

The lady stoops down and kisses him.

and so renowned a knight,

"ȝet I kende yow of kyssyng," quoth þe clere þenne,  
 "Quere-so countenaunce is couþe, quikly to clayme,  
 þat bicumes vche a knyȝt, þat cortaysy vses."

1492 "Do way," quoth þat derf mon, "my dere, þat speche,  
 For þat durst I not do, lest I denayed were,  
 If I were werned, I were wrang I-wysse, ȝif I profered."

"Ma fay," quoth þe mere wyf, "ȝe may not be werned,  
 1496 ȝe ar stif in-noghe to constrayne wyth strenkþe, ȝif  
 yow lykeȝ,

ȝif any were so vilanous þat yow deſtaye<sup>1</sup> wolde."

"ȝe, be god," quoth Gawayn, "good is your speche,  
 Bot þrete is vn-þryuande in þede þer I lende,

1500 & vche gift þat is geuen not with goud wylle;  
 I am at your comaundement, to kysse quen yow lykeȝ,  
 ȝe may ſach quen yow lyst, & leue quen yow þynkkeȝ,  
 in space."

þe lady louteȝ a-down,  
 & comlyly kysses his face,  
 Much ſpeche þay þer expoun,  
 Of druryes greine & grace.

## XV.

"I would learn," 1508 "I wolde<sup>2</sup> wyt at yow, wyȝe," þat worþy þer sayde,  
 she says, "why you, who are so young and active,  
 & yow wrathed not þer-wyth, what were þe skylle,  
 þat so ȝong & so ȝepe, as ȝe [ar] at þis tyme,  
 So cortayse, so knyȝtly, as ȝe ar knowne oute,

so skilled in the true sport of love,

1512 & of alle cheualry to chose, þe cheſ þyng a-loſed,  
 Is<sup>3</sup> þe lel layk of luf, þe leſſture of armes;  
 For to telle of þis tenelyng of þis trwe knyȝteȝ,  
 Hit is þe tytelet, token, & tȝxt of her werkkeȝ,

1516 How le[des] for her lele luf hor lydeȝ han auntered,  
 Endured for her drury dalful stoundeȝ,  
 & after wenged with her walour & voyded her care,  
 & broȝt blyſſe in-to boure, with bountees hor awen.

1520 & ȝe ar knyȝt comlokeſt kyd of your elde,

<sup>1</sup> de vaye, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> wolde (?).

<sup>3</sup> In (?).

- Your worde & your worchip walke; ay quere,  
 & I haf seten by your-self here sere twyes,  
 ȝet herde I neuer of your hed helde no worde;  
 1524 þat euer longed to luf, lasse ne more;  
 & ȝe, þat ar so cortays & coynt of your, hetes,  
 Oghs to a ȝonke ȝynk ȝern to schewe,  
 & teche sum tokene; of trweluf craftes.  
 1528 Why ar ȝe lewed, þat alle þe los welde;  
 Oþer elles ȝe demen me to dille, your dalyaunce to herken?  
 for schame!
- I com hider sengel, & sitte,  
 1532 To lerne at yow sum game,  
 Dos, teche; me of your wytte,  
 Whil my lorde is fro hame."

[Fol. 111b.]

hauenever talked  
to me of love.You ought to  
show a young  
thing like me  
some token of  
'true-love's  
crafts.'So teach me of  
your 'wit' while  
my lord is from  
home."

## XVI.

- "In goud fayþe," quoth Gawayn, "god yow for-ȝelde,  
 1536 Gret is þe godē gle, & gomen to me huge,  
 þat so worþy as ȝe wolde wyne hidere,  
 & pyne yow, with so pouer a mon, as play wyth your knyȝt,  
 With any skynne; cowntenaunce, hit keure; me ese;  
 1540 Bot to take þe touaile<sup>1</sup> to my-self, to trwluf expoun,  
 & towche þe teme; of tyxt, & tale; of arme;  
 To yow þat, I wot wel, welde; more slyȝt  
 Of þat art, bi þe half, or a hundreth of seche  
 1544 As I am, oþer euer schal, in erde þer I leue,  
 Hit were a fole fele-folde, my fre, by my trawþe.  
 I wolde yowre wylnyng worche at my myȝt,  
 As I am hyȝly bihalden, & euer-more wylle  
 1548 Be seruauȝt to your-seluen, so saue me dryȝtyn!"  
 þus hym frayned þat fre, & fondet hym ofte,  
 For to haf wonnen hym to woȝe, what-so scho þoȝt elleȝ,  
 Bot he defended hym so fayr, þat no faut semed,  
 1552 Ne non euel on nawþer halue, nawþer þay wysten,  
 bot blysse;

"It is a great  
pleasure to me,"  
says Sir Ga-  
wayne, "to hear  
you talk,but I cannot un-  
dertake the task  
to expound true-  
love and tales of  
arms.I will, however,  
act according to  
your will,and ever be your  
servant."Thus Gawayne  
defends himself.<sup>1</sup> tornayle (?).

The lady, having  
kissed the knight,  
takes leave of  
him.

1556

pay laȝed & layked longe,  
At þe last scho con hym kysse,  
Hir leue fayr<sup>þe</sup> con scho fonge,  
& went hir waye I-wysse.

## XVII.

Gawayne rises,  
hears mass, and  
then dines.

[Fol. 112.]

Meanwhile the  
lord pursues the  
wild boar,

that bit the backs  
of his hounds  
asunder,

and caused the  
stiffest of the  
hunters to start.

The boar runs  
into a hole in a  
rock by the side  
of a brook.

The froth foams  
at his mouth.

None durst ap-  
proach him,

so many had he  
torn with his  
tusks.

- 1560 þe lede with þe ladye; layked alle day,  
Bot þe lorde ouer þe longe; launced ful ofte,  
Swe; his vncely swyn, þat swynge; bi þe bonkke;  
& bote þe best of his brache; þe bakke; in sunder;  
1564 þer he bode in his bay, tel<sup>1</sup> bawe-men hit breken,  
& made<sup>2</sup> hym, maw-gref his hed, for to mwe vtter;  
So felle fione; þer flete, when þe folk gedered;  
Bot yet þe styffest to start bi stounde; he made,  
1568 Til at þe last he wat; so mat, he myȝt no more renne,  
Bot in þe hast þat he myȝt, he to a hole wyne;  
Of a rasse, bi a rokk, þer renne; þe borne,  
He gete þe bonk at his bak, bigyne; to scrape,  
1572 þe froþe femed<sup>3</sup> at his mouth vnfare bi þe wyke,  
Whette; his whyte tusche; with hym þen irked  
Alle þe burne; so bolde, þat hym by stoden,  
To nye hym on-ferum, bot neȝe hym non durst  
1576 for woþe;  
He hade hurt so mony byforne,  
þat al þuȝt<sup>4</sup> þenne ful loþe,  
Be more wyth his tusche; tornȝ,  
1580 þat breme wat; [&] brayn-wod bothe.

## XVIII.

The knight, see-  
ing the boar at  
bay,

alights from his  
horse,

Til þe knyȝt com hym-self, kachande his blonk,  
Sy; hym byde at þe bay, his burne; bysyde,  
He lyȝtes luflych adoun, leueȝ, his corsour,

<sup>1</sup> til (?)<sup>2</sup> madee, in MS.<sup>3</sup> fomed (?).<sup>4</sup> þoȝt (?).

- 1584 Brayde; out a bryt bront, & bigly forth stryde;  
 Founde; fast þur; þe forth, þer þe felle byde;  
 þe wylde wat; war of þe wyȝe with weppen in honde, and seeks to at-  
 Hef hyȝly þe here, so hetterly he fnaȝt, tack him with his  
 sword.
- 1588 þat fele ferde for þe freke;<sup>1</sup> lest felle hym þe worre;  
 þe swyn sette; hym out on þe segge euen, The "swine sets  
 out" upon the  
 man,  
 þat þe burne & þe bor were boþe vpon hepe;  
 In þe wyȝt-est<sup>2</sup> of þe water, þe worre had þat oþer;  
 who, aiming well,
- 1592 For þe mon, merkke; hym wel, as þay mette fyrst,  
 Set sadly þe scharp in þe slot euen,  
 Hit hym vp to þe hult, þat þe hert schyndered,  
 & he þarrande hym þelde, & þedoun<sup>3</sup> þe water, wounds him in  
 the pit of the  
 stomach.
- 1596 þat ful tyt;  
 A hundreth hounde; hym hent,  
 þat bremely con hym bite,  
 Burne; him broȝt to hent,  
 & dogge; to dethe endite.
- [Fol. 112b.]  
 The boar is soon  
 bitten to death  
 by a hundred  
 hounds.
- 1600

## XIX.

- There wat; blawynge of prys in mony breme horne,  
 Heȝe halowing on hiȝe, with haȝele; þat myȝt;  
 Brachetes bayed þat best, as bidden þe maystere;  
 1604 Of þat chargeaunt chace þat were chef huntres.  
 Þenne a wyȝe þat wat; wys vpon wod crafte;  
 To vnlace þis bor lufly bigynne;  
 Fyrst he hewes of his hed, & on hiȝe sette;  
 1608 & syȝen rende; him al roȝhe bi þe rygge after,  
 Brayde; out þe boweles, brenne; hom on glede,  
 With bred blent þer-with his braches rewarde;  
 Syȝen he britne; out þe brawen in bryt brode[s] chelde;  
 1612 & hat; out þe hastlette; as hiȝtly biseme;  
 & ȝet hem halche; al hole þe halue; to-geder,  
 & syȝen on a stif stange stoutly hem henges.
- Then was there  
 blowing of horns,  
 and baying of  
 hounds.  
 One wise in wood-  
 craft begins to  
 unlace the boar.  
 First he hews off  
 the head, then  
 rends him by the  
 back.  
 He next removes  
 the bowels, broils  
 them on the  
 ashes, and there-  
 with rewards his  
 hounds.  
 Then the hastlets  
 are removed.  
 The two halves  
 are next bound  
 together and  
 hung upon a pole.

<sup>1</sup> freke (?).<sup>2</sup> wyȝcrest (?); this word is doubtful in the MS.<sup>3</sup> ȝede down (?).



The boar's head  
is borne before  
the knight, who  
hastens home.

Now with <sup>hand</sup> his ilk swyn þay swengen to home;  
1616 þe bores hed wat; borne bifore þe burnes seluen,  
þat him for-ferde in þe forþe, þur; forþe of his honde,  
so stronge;

Gawayne is call-  
ed to receive the  
spoil.

1620 Til he se; syr Gawayne,  
In halle hym þo;st ful longe,  
He calde, & he com gawn,  
His fee; þer for to fonge.

## XX.

The lord of the  
land is well  
pleased when he  
sees Sir Gawayne.

1624 þe lorde ful lowde with lote, & la;ed myry,  
When he se;e syr G: with solace he speke;  
þe goude ladye; were geten, & gedered þe meyny,  
He schewe; hem þe schelde; & schapes hem þe tale,  
Of þe largesse, & þe lenþe, þe liferne; also,

He shows him  
the shields of  
the wild boar,  
and tells him of  
its length and  
breadth.

1628 Of þe were of þe wylde swyn, in wod þer he fled.  
þat oþer kny;t ful comly comended his dede;  
& praysed hit as gret prys, þat he proued hade;  
For suche a brawne of a best, þe bolde burne sayde,  
1632 Ne such sydes of a swyn, segh he neuer are.  
þenne hondeled þay þe hoge hed, þe hende mon hit  
praysed,

Such a "brawn  
of a beast," Sir  
Gawayne says, he  
never has seen.

[Fol. 113.]

Gawayne takes  
possession of it  
according to  
covenant,

& let lodly þerat þe lorde forto here:  
"Now Gawayn," quoth þe god mon, "þis gomen is  
your awen,

1636 Bi fyn forwarde & faste, faythely þe knowe,"  
"Hit is sothe," quoth þe segge, "& as siker trwe;  
Alle my get I schal yow gif agayn, bi my trawþe."  
He [hent] þe hapel aboute þe halse, & hendely hym  
kysses,

and in return  
kisses his host,

1640 & after-sones of þe same he serued hym þere.  
"Now ar we euen," quoth þe hapel, "in þis euen-tide,  
Of alle þe couenauntes þat we kny;t, syþen I com hider,  
bi lawe;"

who declares his  
guest to be the  
best he knows.

þe lorde sayde, "bi saynt Gile,  
þe ar þe best þat I knowe,

þe ben ryche in a whyle,  
Such chaſſer & þe drowe."

## XXI.

- 1648 þenne þay teldet table; [on] trestes alofte,  
Kesten cloþe; vpon, clere lyȝt þenne  
Wakned bi woþe; waxen torches  
Segge; sette, & ſerued in ſale al aboute;  
1652 Much glam & gle glent vp þer-inne,  
Aboute þe fyre vpon flet, & on fele wyse,  
At þe ſoper & after, mony aþel ſonge;,  
As counsutes of kryſt-maſſe, & carole; newe,  
1656 With alle þe manerly mæþe þat mon may of telle.  
& euer oure luſtych knyȝt þe lady bi-syde;  
Such ſemblaunt to þat ſegge ſemly ho made,  
Wyth ſtilleſtollen countenaunce, þat ſtalworth to pleſe,  
1660 þat al for-wondered wat; þe wyȝe, & wroth with hym-  
ſeluen,  
Bot he nolde not for his nurture nurne hir a-þayne;,  
Bot dalt with hir al in daynte, how-ſe-euer þe dede turned  
to wrast;  
1664 Quen þay hade played in halle,  
As lange as hor wylle hom laſt,  
To chambre he<sup>1</sup> con hym calle,  
& to þe chemne þay paſt.

Tables are raiſed  
aloft,  
cloths caſt upon  
them,  
and torches are  
lighted.

With much mirth  
and glee,

ſupper is ſerued  
in the hall,

and euer our  
lovely knight by  
the lady ſits,

who does all ſhe  
can to pleaſe her  
companion.

When they had  
long played in  
the hall,

they proceeded  
"to chamber."

## XXII.

- 1668 Ande þer þay dronken, & dalten, & demed eft nwe,  
To norne on þe ſame note, on nwe;ere; euen;  
Bot þe knyȝt craued leue to kayre on þe morn,  
For hit wat; ne; at þe terme, þat he to<sup>2</sup> ſchulde.  
1672 þe lorde hym letted of þat, to lenge hym reſteyed,  
& ſayde, "as I am trwe ſegge, I ſiker my trawþe,  
þou ſchal cheue to þe grene chapel, þy charres to make,

There they drank  
and diſcourſed.

Gawayne begs  
leue to depart  
on the morrow.

[Fol. 113b.]

His hoſt ſwears  
to him,  
that he ſhall  
come to the Green

<sup>1</sup> ho (?).

<sup>2</sup> te (?).

Chapel on New  
Year's morn long  
before prime.

1676 Leude, on nw;ere; lyzt, longe bifore pryme;  
For-þy þow lye in þy loft, & lach þyn ese,  
& I schal hunt in þis holt, & halde þe towche;  
Chauunge wyth þe cheuisaunce, bi þat I charre hider;  
For I haf fraysted þe twys, & faythful I fynde þe,  
1680 Now þrid tyme þrowe best þenk on þe morne,  
Make we mery quyl we may, & mynne vpon Ioye,  
For þe lur may mon lach, when so mon lyke;.”

Our knight con-  
sents to remain  
foranothernight.

1684 Þis wat; grayþely graunted, & Gawayn is lenged,  
Bliþe broȝt wat; hym drynk, & þay to bedde þeden,  
with list;

Full still and  
softly he sleeps  
all night.

Syr G : lis & slepes,  
Ful stille & softe al niȝt;  
þe lorde þat his crafte; kepes,  
Ful erly he wat; diȝt.

Early in the  
morning the lord  
is up.

1688

### XXIII.

After mass, a  
morsel he takes  
with his men.

After messe a morsel he & his men token,  
Miry wat; þe mornyn, his mounture he askes ;

Then were all on  
their horses be-  
fore the hall-  
gates.

1692 Alle þe haþeles þat on horse schulde helden hym after,  
Were boun busked on hor blonkke; bi-fore<sup>1</sup> þe halle  
þate; ;

It was a clear  
frosty morning.

Ferly fayre wat; þe folde, for þe forst clenged,  
In rede rudede vpon rak rises þe sunne,

The hunters, dis-  
persed by a  
wood's side,

1696 & ful clere coste;<sup>2</sup> þe clowdes of þe welkyn.

Hunteres vnhardeled bi a holt syde,  
Rocheres rounge bi rys, for rurde of her hornes ;

come upon the  
track of a fox,

Summe fel in þe fute, þer þe fox bade,  
1700 Trayle; ofte a trayteres,<sup>3</sup> bi traunt of her wyles ;

A kenet kryes þerof, þe hunt on hym calles,  
His felas; fallen hym to, þat fnasted ful þike,

which is followed  
up by the hounds.

Runnen forth in a rabel, in his ryȝt fare ;

They soon get  
sight of the game,

1704 & he fyske; hem by-fore, þay founden hym sone,  
& quen þay segh; hym with syȝt, þay sued hym fast,  
Wreþande hym ful weterly with a wroth noyse ;

<sup>1</sup> bi-forere, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> caste; (?).

<sup>3</sup> trayveres (?).

- & he trantes & tornayee; þur; mony tene greue ;  
 1708 Hamloune;, & herkene;, bi hegge; ful ofte ;  
 At þe last bi a littel dich he lepe; ouer a spenné,  
 Stele; out ful stilly bi a strothe rande,  
 Went haf wylt of þe wode, with wyle; fro þe houndes,  
 1712 þenne wat; he went, er he wyst, to<sup>1</sup> a wale tryster,  
 þer þre þro at a þrich þrat hym at ones,  
 al graye ;  
 He blenched aȝayn bilyue,  
 1716 & stifly start on-stray, & ȝ  
 With alle þe wo on lyue,  
 To þe wod he went away.

and pursue him  
through many a  
rough grove.

[Fol. 114.]  
The fox at last  
leaps over a  
spiny,  
and by a rugged  
path seeks to get  
clear from the  
hounds.  
He comes upon  
one of the hunt-  
ing stations,  
where he is at-  
tacked by the  
dogs.  
However, he slips  
them,

and makes again  
for the wood.

## XXIV.

- Thenne wat; hit lif vpon list to lyþen þe hounde;,  
 1720 When alle þe mute hade hym met, menged to-geder,  
 Suche a sorȝe at þat syȝt þay sette on his hede,  
 As alle þe clamberande clyffes hade clatered on hepes ;  
 Here he wat; halawed, when haþele; hym metten,  
 1724 Loude he wat; ȝayned, with ȝarande speche ;  
 þer he wat; þreted, & ofte þef called,  
 & ay þe titleres at his tayl, þat tary he ne myȝt ;  
 Ofte he wat; runnen at, when he out rayked,  
 1728 & ofte reled in aȝayn, so reniarde wat; wylé.  
 & ȝe he lad hem bi lag, mon, þe lorde & his meyny ;  
 On þis maner bi þe mountes, quyle myd, ouer, vnder,  
 Whyle þe hende knyȝt at home holsumly slepe;,  
 1732 With-inne þe comly cortynes, on þe colde morne.  
 Bot þe lady for luf let not to slepe,  
 Ne þe purpose to payre, þat pyȝt in hir hert,  
 Bot ros hir vp radly, rayked hir þeder,  
 1736 In a mery mantyle, mete to þe erþe,  
 þat wat; furred ful fyne with felle; wel pured,  
 No hwe; goud on hir hede, bot þe haȝer stones

Then was it fine  
sport to listen to  
the hounds,

and the hallooing  
of the hunters.

There the fox was  
threatened and  
called a thief.

But Reynard was  
wily,  
and led them  
astray over  
mounts.  
Meanwhile the  
knight at home  
soundly sleeps  
within his comely  
curtains.

The lady of the  
castle, clothed in  
a rich mantle,

<sup>1</sup> to to, in MS.

- her throat and  
bosom all bare, 1740 Trased aboute hir tressour, be twenty in clusteres;  
Hir pryuen face & hir prote browen al naked,  
Hir brest bare bifore, & bihinde eke.  
comes to Ga-  
wayne's cham-  
ber, Ho come; with-inne þe chambre dore, & closes hit hir  
after,  
opens a window,  
and says, Wayne;<sup>1</sup> vp a wyndow, & on þe wyȝe calleȝ,  
1744 & radly þus rehayted hym, with hir riche wordeȝ,  
with<sup>2</sup> chere;  
"Ah! man, how  
[Fol. 114b.] "A! mon, how may þou slepe,  
canst thou sleep, 1748 þis morning is so clere?"  
this morning is  
so clear?" He watȝ in drowping depe,  
Bot þenne he con hir here.

## XXV.

- The knight was  
then dreaming of  
his forthcoming  
adventure at the  
Green Chapel. 1752 In dreȝ droupyng of dreme draueled þat noble,  
As mon þat watȝ in mornyng of mony þro þoȝtes,  
How þat destiné schulde þat day [dyȝt] his wyrde,  
At þe grene chapel, when he þe gome metes,  
& bi-houes his buffet abide, with-oute debate more;  
Bot quen þat comly he keuēred his wyttes,  
He awakes and  
speaks to his fair  
visitor, 1756 Swenges out of þe sweuenes, & swareȝ with hast.  
þe lady luflych com laȝande swete,  
Felle ouer his fayre face, & fetly hym kyssed;  
He welcumeȝ hir worþily, with a wale chere;  
who sweetly  
kisses him. 1760 He seȝ hir so glorious, & gayly atyred,  
So faultles of hir fetures, & of so fyne hewes,  
Wiȝt wallande Ioye warmed his hert;  
Great joy warms  
the heart of Sir  
Gawayne, With smoȝe amylyng & smolt þay smeten in-to merþe,  
1764 þat al watȝ blis & bonchef, þat breke hem bi-twene,  
& wyȝne;  
þay lanced wordes gode,  
Much wele þen watȝ þer-inne,  
Gret perile bi-twene hem stod,  
and "great peril  
between them  
stood." 1768 Nif mare of hir knyȝt myȝne.

<sup>1</sup> wayue; (?).<sup>2</sup> bi, à sec. manu.

## XXVI.

- For þat prynce of pris depressed hym so þikke,  
 Nurned hym so neþe þe þred, þat nede hym bi-houed,  
 1772 Oþer lach þer hir luf, oþer lodly refuse ;  
 He cared for his cortaysye, lest craþayn he were,  
 & more for his meschef, ȝif he schulde make synne,  
 & be traytor to þat tolke, þat þat telde aȝt.  
 1776 "God schylde," quoth þe schalk, "þat schal not be-  
 falle!"  
 With luf-laȝyng a lyt, he layd hym by-syde  
 Alle þe speche; of specialté þat sprange of her mouthe.  
 Quoth þat burde to þe burne, "blame ȝe disserue,  
 1780 ȝif ȝe luf not þat lyf þat ȝe lye nexte,  
 Bifore alle þe wyȝe; in þe worlde, wounded in hert,  
 Bot if ȝe haf a lemman, a leuer, þat yow lykeȝ better,  
 & folden fayth to þat fre, festned so harde,  
 1784 þat yow lausen ne lyst, & þat I leue nouþe ;  
 And þat ȝe telle me þat, now trwly I pray yow,  
 For alle þe lufe; vpon lyue, layne not þe soþe,  
 for gile."  
 1788 þe knyȝt sayde, "be sayn Ion,"  
 & smeþely con he smyle,  
 "In fayth I welde riȝt non,  
 Ne non wil welde þe quile."

The knight is  
sorely pressed.

He fears lest he  
should become a  
traitor to his  
host.

The lady inquires  
whether he has a  
mistress that he  
loves better than  
her.

[Fol. 115.]

Sir Gawayne  
swears by St.  
John that he  
neither has nor  
desires one.

## XXVII.

- 1792 "þat is a worde," quoth þat wyȝt, "þat worst is of alle,  
 Bot I am swared for soþe, þat sore me þinkeȝ ;  
 Kysse me now comly, & I schal cach heþen,  
 I may bot mourne vpon molde, as may þat much louyes."  
 1796 Sykande ho sweȝe doun, & semly hym kyssed,  
 & siþen ho seueres hym fro, & says as ho stondes,  
 "Now, dere, at þis de-partyng, do me þis ese,  
 Gif me sumquat of þy gifte, þi gloue if<sup>1</sup> hit were,  
 1800 þat I may mynne on þe mon, my mournyng to lassen."

She then kisses  
him, sighing for  
sorrow.

She desires some  
gift,  
by which to re-  
member him.

<sup>1</sup> of, in MS.

Gawayne tells her that she is worthy of a better gift than he can bestow.

- 1804 "Now I-wysse," *quoth* þat wyȝe, "I wolde I hade here  
þe leuest þing for þy luf, þat I in londe welde,  
For ȝe haf deserued, forsoþe, sellyly ofte  
More rewarde bi resoun, þen I reche myȝt,  
Bot to dele yow for drurye, þat dawed bot naked;  
Hit is not *your* honour to haf at þis tyme  
A gloue for a garysoun, of Gawayneȝ gifteȝ,  
1808 & I am here [on] an erande in erdeȝ vncouþe,  
& haue no men wyth no maleȝ, with menskful þingeȝ;  
þat mislykeȝ me, *ladé*, for luf at þis tyme,<sup>1</sup>  
Iche tolke mon do as he is tan, tas to non ille,  
1812 ne pine."

Then says that lovesome,

"Though I had nought of yours, yet should ye have of mine."

- 1816 "Nay, hende of hyȝe honours,"  
*Quoth* þat lufsum vnder lyne,  
"þaȝ I hade oȝt<sup>2</sup> of *yours*ȝ,  
ȝet schulde ȝe haue of myne."

## XXVIII.

She offers him a gold ring,

but he refuses to accept it,

[Fol. 115b.]

as he has none to give in return.

Very sorrowful was that fair one on account of his refusal.

She takes off her "girdle,"

- Ho raȝt hym a riche rynk<sup>3</sup> of red golde werkeȝ,  
Wyth a starande ston, stondande alofte,  
þat bere blusschande bemeȝ as þe bryȝt sunne;  
1820 Wyt ȝe wel, hit watȝ worth wele ful hoge.  
Bot þe renk hit renayed, & redyly he sayde,  
"I wil no gifteȝ for gode, my gay, at þis tyme;  
I haf none yow to norne, ne noȝt wyl I take."  
1824 Ho bede hit hym ful bysily, & he hir bode wernes,  
& swere swyftel[ȝ] his sothe, þat he hit sese nolde;  
& ho sore þat he forsoke, & sayde þer-after,  
"If ȝe renay my rynk,<sup>3</sup> to ryche for hit semeȝ,  
1828 ȝe wolde not so hyȝly halden be to me,  
I schal gif yow my girdel, þat gaynes yow lasse."  
Ho laȝt a lace lyȝtly, þat<sup>4</sup> leke vmbe hir syde,  
Knit vpon hir kyrtel, vnder þe clere mantyle,  
1832 Gered hit watȝ with grene sylke, & with golde schaped,

<sup>1</sup> tyne, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> noȝt (?).

<sup>3</sup> ryng (?).

<sup>4</sup> þat þat, in MS.

Noȝt bot arounde brayden, beten *with* fyngreȝ;  
 & þat ho bede to þe burne, & blyþely bi-soȝt  
 þaȝ hit vn-worþi were, þat he hit take wolde.

and beseeches  
 him to take it.

1836 & he nay þat he nolde neghe *in* no wyse,  
 Nauþer golde ne garysoun, er god hym *grace* sende,  
 To acheue to þe chaunce þat he hade chosen þere.

Gawayne again  
 refuses to accept  
 anything,

"& þerfore, I pray *yow*, displese *yow* noȝt,

1840 & letteȝ be *your* bisnesse, for I bayþe hit *yow* neuer  
 to graunte;

I am derely to *yow* biholde,  
 Bi-cause of *your* sembelaunt,

1844 & euer *in* hot & colde  
 To be *your* trwe seruauant."

but promises,  
 "ever in hot and  
 in cold, to be her  
 true servant."

## XXIX.

"Now forsake *þe* þis silke," sayde þe burde þenne,  
 "For hit is symple *in* hit-self, & so hit wel semeȝ?"

1848 Lo! so hit is littel, & lasse hit is worþy;

Bot who-so knew þe costes þat knit ar þer-inne,  
 He wolde hit prayse at more prys, parauenture;  
 For quat gome so is gorde *with* þis grene lace,

1852 While he hit hade hemely halched aboute,  
 þer is no hapel vnder heuen to-hewe hym þat myȝt;  
 For he myȝt not be slayn, for slyȝt vpon erþe."  
 þen kest þe knyȝt, & hit come to his hert,

"Do you refuse  
 it," says the lady,  
 "because it is  
 simple!"

Whoso knew the  
 virtues that it  
 possesses, would  
 highly prize it.

For he who is  
 girded with this  
 green lace,

1856 Hit were a Iuel for þe Iopardé, þat hym iugged were,  
 When he acheued to þe chapel, his chek forto fech;  
 Myȝ<sup>1</sup> he haf slypped to be vn-slayn, þe sleȝt were noble.  
 þenne he pulged with hir þrepe, & þoled hir to speke,

cannot be wound-  
 ed or slain."

The knight  
 thinks of his ad-  
 venture at the  
 Green Chapel.  
 The lady presses  
 him to accept the  
 lace.  
 [Fol. 116.]

1860 & ho bere on hym þe belt, & bede hit hym swyþe,  
 & he granted, & [ho] hym gafe with a goud wyлле,  
 & bi-soȝt hym, for hir sake, disceuer hit neuer,  
 Bot to lelly layne for<sup>2</sup> hir lorde; þe leude hym acordeȝ,

He consents not  
 only to take the  
 girdle, but to  
 keep the posses-  
 sion of it a secret.

1864 þat neuer wyȝe schulde hit wyt, I-wysse, bot þay twayne,  
 for noȝte;

<sup>1</sup> myȝt (?).

<sup>2</sup> fro (?).



By that time the  
lady has kissed  
him thrice. 1868

He þonkked hir oft ful swyþe,  
Ful þro wiþ hert & þoȝt.  
Bi þat on þrynne syþe,  
Ho hat; kyst þe knyȝt so toȝt.

## XXX.

Then she takes  
her leave.

Gawayne then  
dresses himself,

and conceals the  
love-lace about  
his person.

He then hies to  
mass,

and shrives him  
of his misdeeds,

and prays for ab-  
solution.

He returns to the  
hall, and makes  
himself so merry  
among the ladies,  
with comely  
carols,

that they said,

"Thus merry  
was he never be-  
fore since hither  
he came." 1892

Thenne lachche; ho hir leue, & leue; hym þere,  
For more myrþe of þat mon moȝt ho not gete;  
1872 When ho<sup>1</sup> wat; gon, syr G. gere; hym sone,  
Rises, & riches hym in araye noble,  
Lays vp þe luf-lace, þe lady hym raȝt,  
Hid hit ful holdely, þer he hit eft fonde;  
1876 Syþen chenely to þe chapel choses he þe waye,  
Preuely aproched to a prest, & prayed hym þere  
þat he wolde lyfte<sup>2</sup> his lyf, & lern hym better,  
How his sawle schulde be saued, when he schuld  
seye heþen.  
1880 þere he schrof hym schyrly, & schewed his mysdede;  
Of þe more & þe mynne, & merci beseche;  
& of absolucioun he on þe segge calles;  
& he asoyled hym surely, & sette hym so clene,  
1884 As dome; day schulde haf ben diȝt on þe morn.  
& syþen he mace hym as mery among þe fre ladyes,  
Wiþ comlych caroles, & alle kynnes ioie,  
As neuer he did bot þat daye, to þe derk nyȝt,  
1888 wiþ blys;  
Vche mon hade daynte þare,  
Of hym, & sayde I-wysse,  
þus myry he wat; neuer are,  
Syn he com hider, er þis.

## XXXI.

Gawayne's host is  
still in the field.

Now hym lenge in þat lee, þer luf hym bi-tyde;  
ȝet is þe lorde on þe launde, ledande his gomnes,

<sup>1</sup> he, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> lyste (?).

- He hat; forfaren þis fox, þat he folȝed longe ;  
 1896 As he spreut ouer a spenné, to spye þe schrewe,  
 þer as he herd þe howndes, þat hasted hym swyþe,  
 Renaud com richchande þur; a roȝe greue,  
 & alle þe rabel in a res, ryȝt at his heleȝ.  
 1900 þe wyȝe wat; war of þe wylde, & warly abides,  
 & braydeȝ out þe bryȝt bronde, & at þe best casteȝ ;  
 & he sohunt for þe scharp, & schulde haf arered,  
 A rach rapes hym to, ryȝt er he myȝt,  
 1904 & ryȝt bifore þe hors fete þay fel on hym alle,  
 & worried me þis wyly wyth a wroth noyse.  
 þe lorde lyȝteȝ bi-lyue, & cacheȝ by<sup>1</sup> sone,  
 Rased hym ful radly out of þe rach mouȝes,  
 1908 Haldeȝ heȝe ouer his hede, haloweȝ faste,  
 & þer bayen hym mony bray<sup>2</sup> houndeȝ ;  
 Huntres hyȝed hem þeder, wiȝh horneȝ ful mony,  
 Ay rechatande aryȝt til þay þe renk seȝen ;  
 1912 Bi þat wat; comen his compeyny noble,  
 Alle þat euer ber bugle blowed at ones,  
 & alle þise oȝer halowed, þat hade no hornes,  
 Hit wat; þe myriest mute þat euer men herde,  
 1916 þe rich rurd þat þer wat; raysed for renaude saule,  
 wiȝh lote ;  
 Hor houndeȝ þay þer rewarde,  
 Her<sup>3</sup> hedeȝ þay fawne & frote,  
 1920 & syȝen þay tan reynarde,  
 & tyrnen of his cote.

He has destroyed  
the fox.

[Fol. 1165.]

Hespied Reynard  
coming through  
a "rough grove,"

and tried to hit  
him with his  
sword.

The fox "shunts"  
and is seized by  
one of the dogs.

The lord takes  
him out of the  
hound's mouth.

Hunters hasten  
thither with  
horns full many.

It was the mer-  
riest meet that  
ever was heard.

The hounds are  
rewarded,

and then they  
take Reynard and  
"turn off his  
coat."

## XXXII.

- & þenne þay helden to home, for hit wat; nieȝ nyȝt,  
 Strakande ful stoutly in hor store horneȝ ;  
 1924 þe lorde is lyȝt at þe laste at hys lef home,  
 Fyndeȝ fire vpon flet, þe freke þer by-side,  
 Sir Gawayn þe gode, þat glad wat; wiȝh alle,  
 Among þe ladies for luf he ladde much ioȝe,

The hunters then  
hasten home.

The lord at last  
alights at his dear  
home,

where he finds Ga-  
wayne amusing  
the ladies.

<sup>1</sup> hym (?).

<sup>2</sup> bray (?).

<sup>3</sup> Her her, in MS.

- 1928 He were a bleaust of blwe, þat bradde to þe erþe,  
His surkot semed hym wel, þat softe wat; forred,  
& his hode of þat ilke hinged on his schulder,  
Blande al of blaunner were boþe al aboute.
- The knight comes forward and welcomes his host, 1932 He meteþ me þis god man in myddeþ þe flore,  
& al with gomen he hym gret, & goudly he sayde,  
"I schal fyllen vpon fyrst oure forwardeþ nouþe,  
þat we spedly han spoken, þer spared wat; no drynk;"
- [Fol. 117.]  
and according to  
covenant kisses  
him thrice.  
(See l. 1868.) 1936 þen acoles he [þe] knyȝt, & kysses hym þryes,  
As sanerly & sadly as he hem sette couþe.
- "By Christ," says  
the other, "ye  
have had much  
bliss!" 1940 "Bi kryst," quoth þat oþer knyȝt, "þe cach much sele,  
In cheuisaunce of þis chaffer, ȝif þe haðe goud chepeþ."
- I have hunted all  
day and have  
gotten nothing,  
but the skin of  
this foul fox,  
a poor reward for  
three such  
kisses." 1944 "þe of þe chepe no charg," quoth chefly þat oþer,  
"As is pertly payed þe chepeþ þat I aȝte."  
"Mary," quoth þat oþer mon, "myn is bi-hynde,  
For I haf hunted al þis day, & noȝt haf I geten,  
Bot þis foule fox felle, þe fende haf þe godeþ,  
& þat is ful pore, for to pay for suche prys þinges,  
As þe haf þryȝt me here, þro suche þre cosses,  
so gode."
- 1948 "Inoȝ," quoth syr Gawayn,  
"I þonk yow, bi þe rode;"  
& how þe fox wat; slayn,  
He tolde hym, as þay stode.
- He then tells him  
how the fox was  
slain.

## XXXIII.

- With much mirth  
and minstrelsy  
they made merry, 1952 With merþe & mynstralsye, wyth meteþ at hor wylle,  
þay maden as mery as any men moȝten,  
With laȝyng of ladies, with loteþ of bordeþ;  
Gawayn & þe gode mon so glad were þay boþe,
- 1956 Bot if þe douthe had doted, oþer dronken ben oþer,  
Boþe þe mon & þe meyny maden mony iapeþ,  
Til þe sesoun wat; seȝen, þat þay seuer moste;  
Burneþ to hor bedde be-houed at þe laste.
- until the time  
came for them to  
part. 1960 þenne loȝly his leue at þe lorde fyrst  
Fochecheþ þis fre mon, & fayre he hym þonkkeþ;
- Gawayne takes  
leave of his host,

- "Of such a sellyly<sup>1</sup> soiorne, as I haf hade here,  
*Your honour*, at þis hyȝe fest, þe hyȝe kyng yow ȝelde!  
 1964 I ȝef yow me for on of *youreȝ*, if yowre-self lykeȝ,  
 For I mot nedes, as ȝe wot, meue to morne;  
 & ȝe me take *sum* tolke, to teche, as ȝe hyȝt,  
 þe gate to þe grene chapel, as god wyl me suffer  
 1968 To dele, on nwȝereȝ day, þe dome of my wyrdes."  
 "In god fayȝe," *quoth* þe god mon, "wyth a goud  
 wylle;  
 Al þat euer I yow hyȝt, halde schal I rede."  
 þer asyngnes he a seruauant, to sett hym in þe waye,  
 1972 & coundue hym by þe downeȝ, þat he no drechch had, [Fol. 117b.]  
 For to f[e]rk þurȝ þe fryth, & fare at þe gaynest,  
 bi greue.  
 þe lorde Gawayn con þonk,  
 1976 Such worchip he wolde hym weue;  
 þen at þo ladyeȝ wlonk,  
 þe knyȝt hatȝ tan his leue.

and thanks him  
for his happy  
"sojourn."

He asks for a  
man to teach him  
the way to the  
Green Chapel.

A servant is as-  
signed to him,

and then he takes  
leave of the la-  
dies,

## XXXIV.

- With care & wyth kyssyng he carppeȝ hem tille,  
 1980 & fele þryuande þonkkeȝ he þrat hom to haue,  
 & þay ȝelden hym aȝay[n] ȝeply þat ilk;  
 þay bikende hym to kryst, *with* ful colde sykyngȝ.  
 Syȝen fro þe meyny he menskly de-partes;  
 1984 Vche mon þat he mette, he made hem a þonke,  
 For his seruyse, & his solace, & his sere pyne,  
 þat þay wyth busynes had ben, aboute hym to serue;  
 & vche segge as sore, to seuer *with* hym þere,  
 1988 As þay hade wonde worþyly *with* þat wlonk euer.  
 þen *with* ledes & lyȝt he watȝ ladde to his chambre,  
 & blyȝely broȝt to his bedde, to be at his rest;  
 ȝif he ne slepe soundly, say ne dar I,

kissing them sor-  
rowfully.

They commend  
him to Christ.

He then departs,  
thanking each  
one hemeets "for  
his service and  
solace."

He retires to rest,  
but sleeps but  
little,

<sup>1</sup> selly (?).

- for much has he 1992 For he hade muche on þe morn to mynne, ȝif he wolde,  
to think of on the  
morrow. in þoȝt ;
- Let him there lie  
still. Let hym lyȝe þere stille,  
He hatȝ<sup>1</sup> nere þat he soȝt,  
Be still awhile 1996 & ȝe wyl a while be styлле,  
and I shall tell  
how they  
wrought. I schal telle yow how þay wroȝt.

## [FYTTE THE FOURTH.]

## I.

- New Year's Day  
approaches,  
The weather is 2000  
stormy.  
Snow falls,  
The dales are full  
of drift.  
Gawayne in his  
bed hears each  
cock that crew.  
[Fol. 118.]  
He calls for his  
chamberlain,  
and bids him  
bring him his  
armour.  
Men knock off  
the rust from his  
rich habergeon.
- N**OW neȝeȝ þe nwȝere, & þe nyȝt passeȝ,  
þe day dryueȝ to þe derk, as dryȝtyn biddeȝ ;  
Bot wylde wedereȝ of þe worlde wakned þeroute,  
Clowdes kesten kenly þe colde to þe erþe,  
Wyth nyȝe<sup>2</sup> in-noghe of þe norþe, þe naked to tene ;  
þe snawe snitered ful snart, þat snayped þe wylde ;  
þe werbelande wynde wapped fro þe hyȝe,  
& drof vche dale ful of dryftes ful grete.  
þe leude lystened ful wel, þat leȝ in his bedde,  
þaȝ he lowkeȝ his liddeȝ, ful lyttel he slepes ;  
2008 Bi vch kok þat crue, he knwe wel þe steuen.  
Deliuȝerly he dressed vp, er þe day sprenged,  
For þere watȝ lyȝt of a lau[m]pe, þat lemed in his  
chambre ;  
He called to his chamberlayn, þat cofly hym swared,  
2012 & bede hym bryng hym his bruny, & his blonk sadel ;  
þat oȝer ferkeȝ hym vp, & fecheȝ hym his wedeȝ,  
& grayȝeȝ me syr Gawayn vpon a grett wyse.  
Fyrst he clad hym in his clopeȝ, þe colde for to were ;  
2016 & syȝen his oȝer harnays, þat holdely watȝ keped,  
Boȝe his paunce, & his plateȝ, piked ful clene,  
þe rynges<sup>3</sup> rokked of þe roust, of his riche bruny ;  
& al watȝ fresch as vpon fyrst, & he watȝ fayn þenne  
2020 to þonk ;

<sup>1</sup> watȝ (?).<sup>2</sup> nywe (?).<sup>3</sup> rynkeȝ (?).

- He hade vpon vche pece,  
 Wypped ful wel & wlonk;  
 þe gayest in to Grece,  
 2024 þe burne bede bryng his blonk. The knight then  
calls for his steed.

## II.

- Whyle þe wlonkest wedes he warp on hym-seluen;  
 His cote, wyth þe conysaunce of þe clere werkeþ,  
 Ennurned vpon veluet *vertuuous*<sup>1</sup> stoneþ,  
 2028 Aboute beten, & bounden, enbrauded semeþ,  
 & fayre furred *with-inne* wyth fayre pelures.  
 ȝet laft he not þe lace, þe ladieþ gifte,  
 þat for-gat not Gawayn, for gode of hym-seluen;  
 2032 Bi he hade belted þe bronde vpon his balþe hauncheþ,  
 þenne dressed he his drurye double hym aboute;  
 Swyþe sweþled vmbe his swange swetely, þat knyȝt,  
 þe gordel of þe grene silke, þat gay wel bi-semed,  
 2036 Vpon þat ryol red cloþe, þat ryche wat; to schewe.  
 Bot wered not þis ilk wyþe for wele þis gordel,  
 For pryde of þe pendaunteþ, þaþ polyst þay were,  
 & þaþ þe glyterande golde glent vpon endeþ,  
 2040 Bot forto sauē hym-self, when suffer hym bi-houed,  
 To byde bale *with-oute* dabate, of bronde hym to were,  
 oþer knyffe;  
 Bi þat þe bolde mon boun,  
 2044 Wynneþ þeroute bilyue,  
 Alle þe meyny of renoun,  
 He þonkkeþ ofte ful ryue. While he clothed  
himself in his  
rich weeds,  
  
he forgot not  
the "lace," the  
lady's gift,  
  
but with it doubly  
girded his loins.  
  
He wore it not  
for its rich orna-  
ments,  
  
"but to save him-  
self when it be-  
hoved him to  
suffer."  
  
All the renowned  
assembly he  
thanks full oft.

## III.

- Thenne wat; Gryngolet grayþe, þat gret wat; & huge,  
 2048 & hade ben sojourned sauerly, & in a siker wyse,  
 Hym lyst prik for poynt, þat proude hors þenne;  
 þe wyþe wyneþ hym to, & wyteþ on his lyre,  
 & sayde soberly hym-self, & by his soth swereþ,

<sup>1</sup> *vertuous* (?).

- Gawayne returns thanks for the honour and kindness shown to him by all.
- 2052 "Here is a meyny in þis mote, þat on menske þenkkeþ,  
 þe mon hem maynteines, ioy mot þay haue;  
 þe leue lady, on lyue luf hir bityde;  
 ȝif þay for charyté cherysen a gest,
- 2056 & halden honour in her honde, þe haþel hem ȝelde,  
 þat haldeþ þe heuen vpon hyȝe, & al-so yow alle!  
 & ȝif I myȝt lyf vpon londe lede any quyle,  
 I schuld rech yow sum rewarde redyly, if I myȝt."
- He then steps into his saddle,
- 2060 þenne steppeþ he in-to stirop, & strydeþ alofte;  
 His schalk schewed hym his schelde, on schulder he  
 hit laȝt,  
 Gordeþ to Gryngolet, with his gilt heleþ,  
 & he starteþ on þe ston, stod he no lenger,
- and "starts on the stone" without more delay.
- 2064 to prauunce;  
 His haþel on hors watþ þenne,  
 þat bere his spere & launce.  
 "þis kastel to kryst I kenne,  
 He gef hit ay god chaunce!"
- "This castle to Christ I commend; may he give it ever good chance!"
- 2068

## IV.

- The gates are soon opened.
- The knight passes thereout,
- 2072 Prayses þe porter, bifore þe prynce kneled,  
 Gef hym god & goud day, þat Gawayn he saue;  
 & went on his way, with his wyȝe one,  
 þat schulde teche hym to tourne to þat tene place,
- and goes on his way accompanied by his guide.
- 2076 þer þe ruful race he schulde re-sayue.  
 þay boȝen bi bonkkeþ, þer boȝeþ ar bare,  
 þay clomben bi clyffeþ, þer clengeþ þe colde;  
 þe heuen watþ vp halt, bot vgly þer vnder,
- They climb by cliffs,
- 2080 Mist mured on þe mor, malt on þe mounteþ,  
 Vch hille hade a hatte, a myst-hakel huge;  
 Brokeþ byled, & breke, bi bonkkeþ aboute,  
 Schyre schaterande on schoreþ, þer þay doun schowued.
- where each "hill had a hat and a mist-cloak,"
- [Fol. 119.] 2084 Welawylle watþ þe way, þer þay bi wod schulden,

Til hit wat; sone sesoun, þat þe sunne ryse,  
þat tyde;

until daylight.

- 2088 þay were on a hille ful hyȝe,  
þe quyte snaw lay bisyde;  
þe burne þat rod hym by,  
Bede his mayster abide.

They were then on a "hill full high."

The servant bade his master abide, saying,

## V.

- 2092 "For I haf wonnen yow hider, wyȝe, at þis tyme,  
& now nar ȝe not fer fro þat note place,  
þat ȝe han spied & spuryed so specially after;  
Bot I schal say yow for soþe, syþen I yow knowe,  
& ȝe ar a lede vpon lyue, þat I wel louy,

"I have brought you hither,

ye are not now far from the noted place.

- 2096 Wolde ȝe worch bi my wytte, ȝe worþed þe better.  
þe place þat ȝe prece to, ful perelous is halden;  
þer woneȝ a wyȝe in þat waste, þe worst vpon erþe;  
For he is stiffe, & sturne, & to strike louiea,

Full perilous is it esteemed.

The lord of that 'waste' is stiff and stern.

- 2100 & more he is þen any mon vpon myddelerde,  
& his body bigger þen þe best fowre,  
þat ar in Arþureȝ hous, hestor<sup>1</sup> oþer oþer.  
He cheueȝ þat chaunce at þe chapel grene;

His body is bigger 'than the best four in Arthur's house.'

- 2104 þer passes non bi þat place, so proude in his armes,  
þat he ne dynneȝ hym to deþe, with dynt of his honde;  
For he is a mon methles, & mercy non vses,  
For be hit chorle, oþer chaplayn, þat bi þe chapel rydes,

None passes by the Green Chapel, 'that he does not ding him to death with dint of his hand.'

For be it churl or chaplain, monk, mass-priest, 'or any man else,' he kills them all.

- 2108 Monk, oþer masse-prest, oþer any mon elles,  
Hym þynk as queme hym to quelle, as quyk go hym  
seluen.

For-þy I say þe as soþe as ȝe in sadel sitte,  
Com ȝe þere, ȝe be kyllid, [I] may þe knyȝt rede,

- 2112 Trawe ȝe me þat trwely, þaȝ ȝe had twenty lyues  
to spende;

He has lived there full long.

- 2116 He hatȝ wonyd here ful ȝore,  
On bent much baret bende,  
Aȝayn his dyuteȝ sore,  
ȝe may not yow defende."

Against his dints sore, ye may not defend you.

<sup>1</sup> Hector (?).



## VI.

Wherefore, good  
Sir Gawayne, let  
this man alone.

Go by some other  
region,

[Fol. 119b.]

I swear by God  
and all His saints,  
that I will never  
say that ever ye  
attempted to flee  
from any man."

Gawayne replies  
that to shun this  
danger would  
mark him as a  
"coward knight."

To the Chapel,  
therefore, he will  
go,

though the owner  
thereof were a  
stern knave.

"Full well can  
God devise his  
servants for to  
save."

- "For-þy, goude syr Gawayn, let þe come one,  
& got; a-way sum oþer gate, vpon godde; halue;  
2120 Cayre; bi sum oþer kyth, þer kryst mot yow spede;  
& I schal hy; me hom a;ayn, & hete yow fyrrer,  
þat I schal swere bi god, & alle his gode hal;e;,  
As help me god & þe halydam, & oþe; in-noghe,  
2124 þat I schal lelly yow layne, & lance neuwer tale,  
þat euer þe fondet to fle, for freke þat I wylt."  
"Grant merci," quoth Gawayn, & gruchyng he sayde,  
"Wel worth þe wy;e, þat wolde; my gode,  
2128 & þat lelly me layne, I leue wel þou wolde;!  
Bot helde þou it neuwer so holde, & I here passed,  
Founded for ferde for to fle, in fourme þat þou telle;,  
I were a kny;zt kowarde, I my;zt not<sup>1</sup> be excused.  
2132 Bot I wyl to þe chapel, for chaunce þat may falle,  
& talk wyth þat ilk tulk þe tale þat me lyste,  
Worþe hit wele, oþer wo, as þe wyrde lyke;  
hit hafe;  
2136 þa;e he be a sturn knape,  
To stjitel, &<sup>2</sup> stad with staue,  
Ful wel con dry;tytn schape,  
His seruante; forto saue."

## VII.

- "Mary!" quoth 2140 "Mary!" quoth þat oþer mon, "now þou so much spelle;,  
the other,  
"since it pleases  
thee to lose thy  
life,  
take thy helmet  
on thy head, and  
thy spear in thy  
hand,  
2144 and ride down þis ilk rake, bi þon rokke syde,  
Til þou be bro;zt to þe boþem of þe brem valay;  
þenne loke a littel on þe launde, on þi lyfte honde,  
& þou schal se in þat slade þe self chapel,  
2148 & þe borelych burne on bent, þat hit kepe;.  
Now fare; wel on gode; half, Gawayn þe noble,

<sup>1</sup> mot, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> & &, in MS.

For alle þe golde vpon grounde I nolde go wyth þe,  
Ne bere þe felaschip þurȝ þis fryth on fote fyrre."

- 2152 Bi þat þe wyȝe in þe wod wendeȝ his brydel,  
Hit þe hors with þe heleȝ, as harde as he myȝt,  
Lepeȝ hym ouer þe launde, & leueȝ þe knyȝt þere,  
al one.

- 2156 "Bi goddeȝ self," quoth Gawayn,  
"I wyl nauȝer grete ne grone,  
To goddeȝ wylle I am ful bayn,  
& to hym I haf me tone."

Having thus  
spoken, the guide  
takes leave of the  
knight.

"By God's self,"  
says Sir Ga-  
wayne, "I will  
neither weep nor  
groan.

To God's will I  
am full ready."

## VIII.

- 2160 Thenne gyrdeȝ he to Gryngolet, & gedereȝ þe rake,  
Schowueȝ in bi a schore, at a schaȝe syde,  
Rideȝ þurȝ þe roȝe bonk, ryȝt to þe dale;  
& þenne he wayted hym aboute, & wylde hit hym þoȝt,

[Fol. 120.]  
Then he pursues  
his journey,

rides through the  
dale, and looks  
about.

- 2164 & seȝe no syngne of resette, bi-sydeȝ nowhere,  
Bot hyȝe bonkkeȝ & brent, vpon boȝe halue,  
& ruȝe knokled knarreȝ, with knorned stoneȝ;  
þe skweȝ of þe scowtes skayued<sup>1</sup> hym þoȝt.

He sees no sign  
of a resting-place,  
but only high and  
steep banks.

- 2168 þenne he honed, & wyth-hylde his hors at þat tyde,  
& ofte chaunged his cher, þe chapel to seche;  
He seȝ non suche in no syde, & selly hym þoȝt,  
Sone a lyttel on a launde, a lawe as hit we[re];

No chapel could  
he discern.

- 2172 A balȝ berȝ, bi a bonke, þe brymme by-syde,  
Bi a forȝ of a flode, þat ferked þare;  
þe borne blubred þer-inne, as hit boyled hade.  
þe knyȝt kacheȝ his caple, & com to þe lawe,

At last he sees a  
hill by the side  
of a stream;

- 2176 Liȝteȝ doun luffly, & at a lynde tacheȝ  
þe rayne, & his riche, with a roȝe braunche;  
þenne he boȝeȝ to þe berȝe, aboute hit he walkeȝ,  
Debetande with hym-self, quat hit be myȝt.

Thither he goes,  
alights and fas-  
tens his horse to  
a branch of a tree.

He walks around  
the hill, debating  
with himself  
what it might be,

- 2180 Hit hade a hole on þe ende, & on ayȝer syde,  
& ouer-grown with gresse in glodes ay where,  
& al watȝ holȝ in-with, no-bot an olde caue,

<sup>1</sup> skayned (?).

and at last finds  
an old cave in the  
crag.

2184

Or a creuisse of an olde cragge, he couþe hit noȝt deme  
with spelle,

He prays that  
about midnight  
he may tell his  
matins.

2188

"We,<sup>1</sup> lorde," quoth þe gentyle knyȝt,  
"Wheþer þis be þe grene chapelle;  
He myȝt aboute myd-nyȝt,  
þe dele his matynnes telle!"

## IX.

"Truly," says Sir  
Gawayne, "a  
desert is here,

a fitting place for  
the man in green  
to 'deal here his  
devotions in devil  
fashion.'

2192

"Now I-wysse," quoth Wowayn, "wysty is here;  
þis oritore is vgly, with erbe; ouer-grown;  
Wel biseme; þe wyȝe wruxled in grene  
Dele here his deuocioun, on þe deualeȝ wyse;  
Now I fele hit is þe fende, in my fyue wytteȝ,  
þat hatȝ stoken me þis steuen, to strye me here;  
þis is a chapel of meschaunce, þat chekke hit by-tyde,  
Hit is þe coreddest kyrk, þat euer I com inne!"

It is the most  
cursed kirk that  
ever I entered."

2196

[Fol. 120b.]

Roaming about  
he hears a loud  
noise,

from beyond the  
brook.

It clattered like  
the grinding of a  
scythe on a grind-  
stone.

It whirred like a  
mill-stream.

2204

With heȝe helme on his hede, his launce in his honde,  
He romeȝ vp to þe rokke of þo roȝ woneȝ;  
þene herde he of þat hyȝe hil, in a harde roche,  
Biȝonde þe broke, in a bonk, a wonder breme noyse,  
Quat! hit clattered in þe clyff, as hit cleue schulde,  
As one vpon a gryndelston hade grounden a syȝe;  
What! hit wharred, & whette, as water at a mulne,  
What! hit rusched, & ronge, rawþe to here.  
þenne "bi godde," quoth Gawayn, "þat gereas<sup>2</sup> I trowe,  
Is ryched at þe reuerence, me renk to mete,

bi rote;

2208

Let god worche we loo,  
Hit helpeȝ me not a mote,  
My lif þaȝ I for-goo,  
Drede dotȝ me no lote."

"Though my life  
I forego," says  
the knight, "no  
noise shall terrify  
me."

## X.

Then cried he  
aloud,  
"Who dwells  
here, discourse  
with me to hold?"

2212

Thenne þe knyȝt con calle ful hyȝe,  
"Who stiȝtleȝ in þis sted, me steuen to holde?"

<sup>1</sup> wel (?).<sup>2</sup> at, in MS.

- For now is gode Gawayn goande ryȝt here,  
 If any wyȝe oȝt wyl wynne hider fast,  
 2216 Oȝer now, oȝer neuȝer, his nedeȝ to spede."  
 "Abyde," *quoth* on on þe bonke, abouen ouȝer his hede,  
 "& þou schal haf al in hast, þat I þe hyȝt ones."  
 ȝet he rusched on þat rurde, rapely a þrowe,  
 2220 & wyth quettyng a-wharf, er he wolde lyȝt;  
 & syȝen he keuereȝ bi a cragge, & comeȝ of a hole,  
 Whyrlande out of a wro, wyth a felle weppen,  
 A deneȝ ax nwe dyȝt, þe dynt with [t]o ȝelde  
 2224 With a borelych bytte, bende by þe halme,  
 Fyled in a fylor, fowre fote large,  
 Hit watȝ no lasse, bi þat lace þat lemed ful bryȝt.  
 & þe gome in þe grene gered as fyrst,  
 2228 Boȝe þe lyre & þe leggeȝ, lokkeȝ, & berde,  
 Saue þat fayre on his fote he foundeȝ on þe erȝe,  
 Sette þe stele to the stone, & stalked bysyde.  
 When he wan to þe watter, þer he wade nolde,  
 2232 He hypped ouȝer on hys ax, & orpedly strydeȝ,  
 Bremly broȝe on a bent, þat brode watȝ a-boute,  
 on snawe.  
 Syr Gawayn þe knyȝt con mete,  
 2236 He ne lutte hym no þyng lowe,  
 þat oȝer sayde, "now, syr swete,  
 Of steuen mon may þe trowe."

Now is the good  
 Gawayne going  
 aright.

He hears a voice  
 commanding him  
 to abide where  
 he is.

Soon there comes  
 out of a hole, with  
 a fell weapon,

a Danish axe,  
 quite new,

the "knight in  
 green," clothed  
 as before.

When he reaches  
 the stream, he  
 hops over and  
 strides about.

[Fol. 121.]  
 He meets Sir Ga-  
 wayne without  
 obeisance.  
 The other tells  
 him that he is  
 now ready for  
 conversation.

## XI.

- "Gawayn," *quoth* þat grene gome, "god þe mot loke!"  
 2240 I-wysse þou art welcom,<sup>1</sup> wyȝe, to my place,  
 & þou hatȝ tymed þi trauayl as true<sup>2</sup> mon schulde;  
 & þou knoweȝ þe couenaunteȝ kest *vus* by-twene,  
 At þis tyme twelmonyȝth þou toke þat þe falled,  
 2244 & I schulde at þis nwe ȝere ȝeȝly þe quyte.  
 & we ar in þis valay, verayly oure one,  
 Here ar no renkes vs to rydde, rele as *vus* likeȝ;

"God preserve  
 thee!" says the  
 Green Knight,

"as a true knight  
 'thou hast timed  
 thy travel.'  
 Thou knowest  
 the covenant be-  
 tween us,  
 that on New  
 Year's day I  
 should return thy  
 blow.  
 Here we are  
 alone;

<sup>1</sup> welcon, in MS.

<sup>2</sup> truee, in MS.

Have off thy  
helmet and take  
thy pay at once."

2248

Haf þy þy helme of þy hede, & haf here þy pay;  
Busk no more debate þen I þe bede þenne,  
When þou wypped of my hede at a wap one."

"By God," quoth  
Sir Gawayne, "I  
shall not be-  
grudge thee thy  
will."

2252

"Nay, bi god," quoth Gawayn, "þat me gost lante,  
I schal gruch þe no grwe, for grem þat falleþ;  
Bot styȝtel þe vpon on strok, & I schal stonde styлле,  
& warp þe no wernyng, to worch as þe lykeþ,  
no whare."

Then he shows  
his bare neck,

2256

He lened with þe nek, & lutte,  
& schewed þat schyre al bare,  
& lette as he noȝt dutte,  
For drede he wolde not dare.

and appears un-  
daunted.

## XII.

Then the man in  
green seizes his  
grim tool.

2260

Then þe gome in þe grene grayþed hym swyþe,  
Gedereþ vp hys grymme tole, Gawayn to smyte;  
With alle þe bur in his body he ber hit on lofte,

With all his force  
he raises it aloft.

Munt as maȝtyly, as marre hym he wolde;  
Hade hit dryuen adoun, as dreþ as he atled,

2264

þer hade ben ded of his dynt, þat doȝty watþ euor.

As it came gliding  
down,  
Sir Gawayne  
shrank a little  
with his shoul-  
ders.

Bot Gawayn on þat giserne glyfte hym bysyde,  
As hit com glydande adoun, on glode hym to schende,  
& schranke a lytel with þe schulderes, for þe scharp  
yrne.

2268

þat oþer schalk wyth a schunt þe schene wyth-haldeþ,  
& þenne repreued he þe prynce with mony prowde  
wordeþ :

The other re-  
proved him, say-  
ing,

"Thou art not  
Gawayne that is  
so goodesteemed,

"þou art not Gawayn," quoth þe gome, "þat is so  
goud haldeþ,

þat neuor arȝed for no here, by hylle ne be vale,

[Fol. 121b.] 2272

& now þou fles for ferde, er þou fele harmeþ;

for thou fleest for  
fear before thou  
feelest harm.  
I never flinched  
when thou  
struckest.

Such cowardise of þat knyȝt cowþe I neuor here.

Nawþer fyked I, ne flaþe, freke, quen þou myntest,

Ne kest no kaulacoun, in kynges hous Arthor,

My head flew to  
my foot, yet I  
never fled,

2276

My hede flaþ to my fote, & ȝet flaþ I neuor;  
& þou, er any harme hent, arȝeþ in hert,

Wherefore þe better burne me burde be called  
þer-fore."

wherefore I  
ought to be called  
the better man."

- 2280 Quoth G : , " I schunt one,  
& so wyl I no more,  
Bot þa; my hede falle on þe stone;,  
I con not hit restore.

"I shunted once,"  
says Gawayne,  
"but will no  
more.

## XIII.

- 2284 Bot busk, burne, bi þi fayth, & bryng me to þe poynt,  
Dele to me my destiné, & do hit out of honde,  
For I schal stonde þe a strok, & start no more,  
Til þyn ax haue me hitte, haf here my trawþe."
- 2288 "Haf at þe þenne," quoth þat oþer, & heue; hit alofte,  
& wayte; as wroþely, as he wode were;  
He mynte; at hym ma;tyly, bot not þe mon ryue;,  
With-helde heterly h[i]s honde, er hit hurt my;t.
- 2292 Gawayn grayþely hit byde; , & glent with no membre,  
Bot stode styлле as þe ston, oþer a stubbe auþer,  
þat rapeled is in roche grounde, with rote; a hundreth.  
þen muryly efte con he mele, þe mon in þe grene,
- 2296 "So now þou hat; þi hert holle, hitte me bihou[e]s;  
Halde þe now þe hy;e hode, þat Arþur þe ra;t,  
& kepe þy kanel at þis kest, jif hit keuer may."  
G : ful gryndelly with greme þenne sayde,
- 2300 "Wy þresch on, þou þro mon, þou þrete; to longe,  
I hope þat þi hert ar;e wyth þyn awen seluen."  
"For soþe," quoth þat oþer freke, "so felly þou speke;,  
I wyl no lenger on lyte lette þin ernde,
- 2304 ri;te nowe."
- þenne tas he<sup>1</sup> hym stryþe to stryke,  
& frounses boþe lyppe & browe,  
No meruayle þa; hym myslyke,  
þat hoped of no rescowe.

Bring me to the  
point; deal me  
my destiny at  
once."

"Have at thee,  
then," says the  
other.

With that he aims  
at him a blow.

Gawayne never  
flinches, but  
stands as still as  
a stone.

"Now," says the  
Green Knight, "I  
must hit thee,  
since thy heart is  
whole."

"Thrash on,"  
says the other.

Then the Green  
Knight makes  
ready to strike.

<sup>1</sup> he he, in MS.

## XIV.

He let fall his

[Fol. 122.]

loom on the bare  
neck of Sir Ga-  
wayne.

The sharp  
weapon pierced  
the flesh so that  
the blood flowed.

When the knight  
saw the blood on  
the snow,

he unsheathed  
his sword, and  
thus spake :

"Cease, man, of  
thy blow.

If thou givest me  
any more, readily  
shall I requite  
thee.

Our agreement  
stipulates only  
one stroke."

The Green Knight  
rested on his axe,

looked on Sir Ga-  
wayne, who ap-  
peared bold and  
fearless,

and addressed  
him as follows :  
"Bold knight, be  
not so wroth,

He lyftes lyȝtly his lome, & let hit doun fayre,

With þe barbe of þe bitte bi þe bare nek ;

þa; he homered heterly, hurt hym no more,

2312 Bot snyrt hym on þat on syde, þat seuered þe hyde ;

þe scharp schrank to þe flesche þur; þe schyre grece,

þat þe schene blod ouer his schulderes schot to þe erþe.

& quen þe burne se; þe blode blenk on þe snawe,

2316 He sprit forth spenne fote more þen a spere lenþe,

Hent heterly his helme, & on his hed cast,

Schot with his schuldere; his fayre schelde vnder,

Brayde; out a bryȝt sworde, & bremely he speke; ;

2320 Neuer syn þat he wat; burne borne of his moder,

Wat; he neuer in þis worlde, wyȝe half so blyþe :—

"Blyne, burne, of þy bur, bede me no mo ;

I haf a stroke in þis sted with-oute stryf hent,

2324 & if þow reche; me any mo, I redyly schal quyte,

& ȝelde ȝederly aȝayn, & þer to ȝe tryst,

& foo ;

Bot on stroke here me falle; ,

2328 þe couenaunt schap ryȝt soo,

[Sikered]<sup>1</sup> in Arþure; halle; ,

& þer-fore, hende, now hoo !"

## XV.

The hapel heldet hym fro, & on his ax rested,

2332 Sette þe schaft vpon schore, & to þe scharp lened,

& loked to þe leude, þat on þe launde ȝede,

How þat doȝty dredles deruely þer stonde; ,

Armed ful aȝle; ; in hert hit hym lyke; .

2336 þenn he mele; muryly, wyth a much steuen,

& wyth a r[a]ykande rurde he to þe renk sayde,

"Bolde burne, on þis bent be not so gryndel ;

No mon here vn-manerly þe mys-boden habbe,

2340 Ne kyd, bot as couenaunde, at kynges kort schaped ;

<sup>1</sup> Illegible.

- I hyt þe a strok, & þou hit hat, halde þe wel payed, I promised thee  
 I relece þe of þe remnaunt, of ryȝtes alle oþer; a stroke and thou  
 ȝif<sup>1</sup> I deliuer had bene, a boffet, paraunter, hast it, be satis-  
 fied.
- 2344 Icouþewroþelokerhaf waret, [&] to þe haf wroȝtanger.<sup>2</sup> I could have dealt  
 worse with thee.  
 Fyrst I mansed þe muryly, with a mynt one,  
 & roue þe wyth no rof, sore with ryȝt I þe profered, [Fol. 122b.]  
 For þe forwarde þat we fest in þe fyrst nyȝt, I menaced thee  
 with one blow for  
 2348 & þou trystly þe trawþe & trwly me haldeȝ, the covenant be-  
 tween us on the  
 Al þe gayne þow me gef, as god mon schulde; first night.  
 þat oþer munt for þe morne, mon, I þe profered,  
 þou kyssedes my clere wyf, þe cosseȝ me raȝteȝ, Another I aimed  
 at thee because  
 2352 For boþe two here I þe bede bot two bare myntes, thou kissedst  
 my wife.  
 boutte scaþe;  
 Trwe mon trwe restore,  
 þenne þar mon drede no waþe;  
 2356 At þe brid þou fayled þore,  
 & þer-for þat tappe ta þe.

A true man  
 should restore  
 truly, and then  
 he need fear no  
 harm.  
 Thou failedst at  
 the third time,  
 and therefore  
 take thee that tap.  
 (See l. 1861.)

## XVI.

- For hit is my wede þat þou wereȝ, þat ilke wouen girdel, For my weed  
 Myn owen wyf hit þe woued, I wot wel forsoþe; (woven by my  
 wife) thou wear-  
 2360 Now know I wel þy cosses, & þy costes als, est.  
 & þe wowyng of my wyf, I wroȝt it myseluen; I know thy kisses  
 and my wife's  
 I sende hir to asay þe, & sothly me þynkkeȝ, wooing.  
 On þe faultlest freke, þat euer on fote ȝede; I sent her to try  
 thee,  
 2364 As perle bi þe quite pese is of prys more, and faultless I  
 found thee.  
 So is Gawayn, in god fayth, bi oþer gay knyȝteȝ.  
 Bot here yow lakked a lyttel, syr, & lewte yow wonted, But yet thou sin-  
 nedst a little,  
 Bot þat watȝ for no wylyde werke, ne wowyng nauþer,  
 2368 Bot for ȝe lufud your lyf, þe lasse I yow blame." for love of thy  
 life."  
 þat oþer stif mon in study stod a gret whyle;  
 So agreued for greme he gryed with-inne,  
 Alle þe blode of his brest blende in his face,  
 2372 þat al he schrank for schome, þat þe schalk talked.  
 þe forme worde vpon folde, þat þe freke meled,—

Gawayne stands  
 confounded.

<sup>1</sup> uf, in MS.<sup>2</sup> This word is doubtful.



"Cursed," he  
says, "be cow-  
ardice and covet-  
ousness both!"

Then he takes off  
the girdle and  
throws it to the  
knight.

He curses his  
cowardice,

and confesses  
himself to have  
been guilty of  
untruth.

[Fol. 123.]

"Cursed worth cowarddyse & couetyse boþe!  
In yow is vylany & vyse, þat vertue disstryeþ."

- 2376 þenne he kaxt to þe knot, & þe kest lawseþ,  
Brayde broþely þe belt to þe burne seluen:  
"Lo! þer þe falssyng, foule mot hit falle!  
For care of þy knokke cowardyse me taxt  
2380 To a-corde me with couetyse, my kynde to for-sake,  
þat is larges & lewte, þat longeþ to knyȝteþ.  
Now am I fawty, & falce, & ferde haf been euor;  
Of trecherye & vn-trawþe boþe bityde sorþe  
2384 & care!

- I bi-knowe yow, knyȝt, here styлле,  
Al fawty is my fare,  
Leteþ me ouer-take your wylle,  
2388 & efte I schal be ware."

## XVII.

Then the other,  
laughing, thus  
spoke:

"Thou art con-  
fessed so clean,

that I hold thee  
as pure as if thou  
hadst never been  
guilty.

I give thee, sir,  
the gold-hemmed  
girdle,

as a token of thy  
adventure at the  
Green Chapel.  
Come again to my  
abode, and abide  
there for the re-  
mainder of the  
festival."

- Thenn loþe þat oþer leude, & luffily sayde,  
"I halde hit hardily<sup>1</sup> hole, þe harme þat I hade;  
þou art confessed so clene, be-knownen of þy mysses,  
2392 & hatþ þe penaunce apert, of þe poynt of myn egge,  
I halde þe polysed of þat plyȝt, & pured as clene,  
As þou hadeþ neuor forfeþed, syþen þou watþ fyrst borne.  
& I gif þe, syr, þe gurdel þat is golde hemmed;  
2396 For hit is grene as my goune, syr G : , þe maye  
þenk vpon þis ilke þrepe, þer þou forth þryngeþ  
Among prynces of prys, & þis a pure token  
Of þe chaunce of þe grene chapel, at cheualrous knyȝteþ;  
2400 & þe schal in þis nwe ȝer aȝayn to my woneþ,  
& we schyn reuel þe remnaunt of þis ryche fest,  
ful bene."

- þer laþed hym fast þe lorde,  
2404 & sayde, "with my wyf, I wene,  
We schal yow wel acorde,  
þat watþ your enmy kene."

<sup>1</sup> hardilyly, in MS.

## XVIII.

- "Nay, for soþe," *quoth* þe segge, & sesed hys helme,  
 2408 & hat; hit of hendely, & þe haþel þonkke;  
 "I haf soiornd sadly, sele yow bytyde,  
 & he ȝelde hit ȝow ȝare, þat ȝarkke; al menskes!  
 & comaunde; me to þat cortays, *your* comlych fere,  
 2412 Boþe þat on & þat oþer, myn honoured ladye;  
 þat þus hor knyȝt wyth hor kest han koyntly bigyled.  
 Bot hit is no ferly, þa; a fole madde,  
 & þurȝ wyles of wymmen be wonen to sorȝe;  
 2416 For so wat; Adam in erde with one bygyled,  
 & Salamon with fele sere, & Samson eft sone;  
 Dalyda dalt hym hys wyrde, & Dauyth þer-after  
 Wat; blended with Barsabe, þat much bale poled.  
 2420 Now þese were wrathed wyth her wyles, hit were a  
 wynne huge,  
 To luf hom wel, & leue hem not, a leude þat couþe,  
 For þes wer forne<sup>1</sup> þe freest þat folȝed alle þe sele,  
 Ex-ellently of alle þyse oþer, vnder heuen-ryche,  
 2424 þat mused;  
 & alle þay were bi-wyled,  
 With<sup>2</sup> wymmen þat þay vsed,  
 þa; I be now bigyled,  
 2428 Me þink me burde be excused."

"Nay, forsooth,"  
says Gawayne,

"I have sojourn-  
ed sadly, but bliss  
betide thee!

Commend me to  
your comely wife  
and that other  
lady who have  
beguiled me.

But it is no mar-  
vel for a man to  
be brought to  
grief through a  
woman's wiles.

Adam, Solomon,  
Sampson, and Da-  
vid were beguiled  
by women.

How could a man  
love them and be-  
lieve them not?

[Fol. 123b.]

Though I be now  
beguiled, me-  
thinks I should  
be excused.

## XIX.

- "Bot *your* gordel," *quoth* G: "god yow for-ȝelde!  
 þat wyl I welde wyth good wylle, not for þe wynne  
 golde,  
 Ne þe saynt, ne þe sylk, ne þe syde pendaundes,  
 2432 For wele, ne for worchyp, ne for þe wlonk werkke;  
 Bot in synne of my surfet I schal se hit ofte;  
 When I ride in renoun, remorde to myseluen  
 þe faut & þe fayntyse of þe flesche crabbed,

But God reward  
you for your  
girdle.

I will wear it in  
remembrance of  
my fault.

<sup>1</sup> forme (?).

<sup>2</sup> with wyth, in MS.

And when pride  
shall prik me,  
a look to this lace  
shall abate it.

2436 How tender hit is to entyse teches of fylþe;  
& þus, quen pryde schal me pryk, for prowes of armes,  
þe loke to þis luf lace schal leþe my hert.  
Bot on I wolde yow pray, displeses yow neuer;

But tell me your  
right name and I  
shall have done."

The Green Knight  
replies, "I am  
called Bernlak de  
Hautdesert,  
through might of  
Morgain la Fay,

the pupil of Mer-  
lin.

2440 Syn þe be lorde of the þonder londe, þer I haf lent inne,  
Wyth yow wyth worschyp,—þe wyþe hit yow þelde  
þat vp-haldeþ þe heuen, & on hy; sitteþ,—

How norne þe yowre ryȝt nome, & þenne no more?"

2444 "þat schal I telle þe trwly," quoth þat oþer þenne,  
"Bernlak de Hautdesert I hat in þis londe,  
þur; myȝt of Morgne la Faye, þat in my hous lenges,  
&<sup>1</sup> koyntyse of clergie, bi craftes wel lerned,

2448 þe maystres of Merlyn, mony ho<sup>3</sup> taken;  
For ho hat; dalt drwry ful dere sum tyme,  
With þat conable klerk, þat knowes alle your knyȝte;  
at hame;

2452 Morgne þe goddes,  
þerfore hit is hir name;  
Weldeþ non so hyþe hawtesse,  
þat ho ne con make ful tame.

She can tame even  
the haughtiest.

## XX.

It was she who  
caused me to test  
the renown of the  
Round Table,

2456 Ho wayned me vpon þis wyse to your wyne halle,  
For to assay þe surquidre, ȝif hit soth were,  
þat rennes of þe grete renoun of þe Rounde Table;  
Ho wayned me þis wonder, your wytte; to reue,

[Fol. 124.]

hoping to grieve  
Guenever and  
cause her death  
through fear.

2460 For to haf greued Gaynour, & gart hir to dyþe,  
With gopnyng<sup>3</sup> of þat ilke gomen, þat gostlych speked,  
With his hede in his honde, bfore þe hyþe table.  
þat is ho þat is at home, þe auncian lady;

She is even thine  
aunt.

2464 Ho is euen þyn aunt, Arþure; half suster,  
þe duches doȝter of Tyntagelle, þat dere Vter after  
Hade Arþur vpon, þat aþel is nowþe.  
þerfore I eþe þe, haþel, to com to þy naunt,

Therefore come  
to her and make  
merry in my  
house."

<sup>1</sup> in (?).

<sup>2</sup> ho hat; (?).

<sup>3</sup> glopnyng (?).

- 2468 Make myry in my hous, my meny þe louies,  
 & I wol þe as wel, wyȝe, bi my faythe,  
 As any gome vnder god, for þy grete traube."  
 & he nikked hym naye, he nolde bi no wayes;  
 2472 þay acolen & kyssen, [bikennen] ayþer oþer  
 To þe prynce of paradise, & parten ryȝt þere,  
 on coolde;

Gawayne refuses  
to return with the  
Green Knight.

- Gawayn on blonk ful bene,  
 2476 To þe kynges burȝ buskes bolde,  
 & þe knyȝt in þe enker grene,  
 Whiderwarde so euȝr he wolde.

On horse full fair  
he bends to Ar-  
thur's hall.

## XXI.

- Wylde wayes in þe worlde Woven now rydeȝ,  
 2480 On Gryngolet, þat þe grace hade geten of his lyue;  
 Ofte he herbered in house, & ofte al þeroute,  
 & mony a-venture in vale, & venquyst ofte,  
 þat I ne tyȝt, at þis tyme, in tale to remene.  
 2484 þe hurt watȝ hole, þat he hade hent in his nek,  
 & þe blykkande belt he bere þerabout, e  
 A belef as a bauderyk, bounden bi his syde,  
 Loken vnder his lyfte arme, þe lace, with a knot,  
 2488 In tokenyng he watȝ tane in tech of a faute;  
 & þus he comes to þe court, knyȝt al in sounde.  
 þer wakned wele in þat wone, when wȝst þe grete,  
 þat gode G: watȝ comen, gayn hit hym þoȝt;  
 2492 þe kyng kysseȝ þe knyȝt, & þe whene alce,  
 & syþen mony syker knyȝt, þat soȝt hym to haylce,  
 Of his fare þat hym frayned, & ferlyly he telles;  
 Bi-knoweȝ alle þe costes of care þat he hade,—  
 2496 þe chaunce of þe chapel, þe chere of þe knyȝt,  
 þe luf of þe ladi, þe lace at þe last.  
 þe nirt in þe nek he naked hem schewed,  
 þat he laȝt for his vnlente at þe leudes hondes,  
 2500 for blame;

Wild ways now  
Gawayne rides.

Oft he harboured  
in house and oft  
thereout.

The wound in his  
neck became  
whole.  
He still carried  
about him the  
belt,

In token of his  
fault.

Thus he comes to  
the Court of King  
Arthur.  
Great then was  
the joy of all.

The king and his  
knights ask him  
concerning his  
journey.

Gawayne tells  
them of his ad-  
ventures,

[Fol. 124b.]  
the love of the  
lady, and lastly  
of the lace.  
He showed them  
the cut in his  
neck.

He groaned for  
grief and shame,  
and the blood  
rushed into his  
face.

2504

He tened quen he schulde telle,  
He groned for gref & grame;  
þe blod in his face con melle,  
When he hit schulde schewe, for schame.

## XXII.

"Lo!" says he,  
handling the lace,  
"this is the band  
of blame,

a token of my  
cowardice and  
covetousness.

I must needs  
wear it as long  
as I live."

The king com-  
forts the knight,  
and all the court  
too.

Each knight of  
the brotherhood  
agrees to wear a  
bright green belt,

for Gawayne's  
sake,

who ever more  
honoured it.

Thus in Arthur's  
day this adven-  
ture befell.

He that bore the  
crown of thorns  
bring us to His  
bliss!

- 2508 Of couardise & couetyse, þat I haf cast þare,  
þis is þe token of vn-trawþe, þat I am tan inne,  
& I mot nede; hit were, wyle I may last;  
For non may hyden his harme, bot vnhap ne may hit,  
2512 For þer hit one; is tachched, twynne wil hit neuer."  
þe kyng comforte; þe knyȝt, & alle þe court als,  
Lajen loude þer-at, & luflyly acorden,  
þat lordes & ladis, þat longed to þe Table,  
2516 Vche burne of þe broþer-hede a bauderyk schulde haue,  
A bende, a belef hym a-boute, of a bryȝt grene,  
& þat, for sake of þat segge, in swete to were.  
For þat wat; acorded þe renoun of þe Rounde Table,  
2520 & he honoured þat hit hade, euer-more after,  
As hit is breued in þe best boke of romaunce.  
þus in Arthurus day þis aunter bitidde,  
þe Brutus bokees þer-of beres wytttenesse;  
2524 Syþen Brutus, þe bolde burne, boȝed hider fyrst,  
After þe segge & þe asaute wat; sesed at Troye,

I-wysse;

2528

Mony auntere; here bi-forne,  
Haf fallen suche er þis:  
Now þat bere þe crown of þorne,  
He bryng vs to his blysse! AMEN.

## NOTES.

- Page 2. 1. 37 *Pis kyng lay at Camylot vpon kryst-masse.*  
*Camalot*, in Malory's "Morte Arthure," is said to be the same as Winchester. Ritson supposes it to be *Caer-went*, in Monmouthshire, and afterwards confounded with *Caer-wynt*, or *Winchester*. But popular tradition here seems the best guide, which assigned the site of *Camalot* to the ruins of a castle on a hill, near the church of South Cadbury, in Somersetshire (Sir F. Madden).
- P. 3. 1. 65 *Nowel nayted o-newe, neuened ful ofte.*  
 Christmas celebrated anew, mentioned full often.  
 Sir F. Madden leaves the word *nayted* unexplained in his Glossary to "Syr Gawayne."
- P. 5. 1. 124 *syhuener* = *syhueren*, i.e. silver dishes. 139 *lyndes* = *lendes*, loins. 142 *in his muckel*, in his greatness.
- P. 7. 1. 216 *in gracons werkes*. Sir F. Madden suggests *Greek* as the meaning of *gracons*. I am inclined to look upon *gracons* as an error for *gracious* = *gracious*, i.e. fair, beautiful, a very common meaning of the term.
- P. 8. ll. 244-5 *As al were slypped vpon slope so slaked hor loter*  
*in hye.*  
 As all were fallen asleep so ceased their words  
 in haste (suddenly).

Sir F. Madden reads *slaked horloteȝ*, instead of *slaked hor lotȝ*, which, according to his glossary, signifies drunken vagabonds. He evidently takes *horloteȝ* to be another (and a very uncommon) form of *harloteȝ* = *harlots*. But *harlot*, or vagabond, would be a very inappropriate term to apply to the *Knights of the Round Table*. Moreover, *slaked* never, I think, means drunken. The general sense of the verb *slake* is to let loose, lessen, cease. Cf. lines 411-2, where *sloke*, another form of *slake*, occurs with a similar meaning : ————— *layt no fyrre ;*

———— *layt no fyrre ;*  
           *bot slokes.*

———— seek no further,  
           but stop (cease).

Sir F. Madden suggests *blows* as the explanation of *slokes*. It is, however, a *verb* in the imperative mood.

- P. 13. l. 394 *siker*. Sir F. Madden reads *swer*.
- P. 14. l. 440 *bluk*. Sir F. Madden suggests *blunk* (horse). I am inclined to keep to the reading of the MS., and explain *bluk* as = *bulk* = trunk. Cf. the use of the word *Blok* in "Early English Alliterative Poems," p. 100, l. 272.
- P. 18. l. 558 *derus doel*, etc. = great grief. Sir F. Madden reads *derne*, i.e. secret, instead of *derus* (= *derf*). Cf. line 564.
- P. 20. l. 629 *& ay quere hit is eindelez*, etc.  
And everywhere it is *endless*, etc.  
Sir F. Madden reads *emdelez*, i.e. with equal sides.
- P. 21. l. 652 *for-be = for-bi* = surpassing, beyond.
- P. 22. l. 681 for *Hadet* read *Halet* = *haled* = exiled (?). See line 1049.
- P. 26. l. 806 *auinant* = *auenaunt*, pleasantly. Sir F. Madden reads *amnant*.
- P. 30. l. 954 *of*. Should we not read *on* (?).
- P. 31. l. 957 *pat oþer wyth a gorger wat; gered ouer þe swyre*.  
The *gorger* or *wimple* is stated first to have appeared in Edward the First's reign, and an example is found on the monument of Aveline, Countess of Lancaster, who died in 1269. From the poem, however, it would seem that the *gorger* was confined to elderly ladies (Sir F. Madden).  
968 *More lykker-wys on to lyk,*  
*Wat; þat scho had on lode.*  
A more pleasant one to like,  
Was that (one) she had under her control.
- P. 32. l. 888 *tayt* = lively, and hence pleasant, agreeable. 1015 *in vayres*, in purity.
- P. 33. l. 1020 *dut = dunt* (?) = *dint* (?), referring to *sword-sports*. 1022 *sayn[t] Ione; day*. This is the 27th of December, and the last of the feast. Sometimes the Christmas festivities were prolonged to New Year's Day (Sir F. Madden). 1047 *derne dede* = secret deed. I would prefer to read *derus dede* = great deed. Cf. lines 558, 564.
- P. 34. l. 1053 *I wot in worlde*, etc. = *I [ne] wot in worlde*, etc.  
1054 *I nolds, bot if I hit negh myȝt on nyȝeres morne,*  
*For alle þe londe in-wyȝh Logres*, etc.  
I would not [delay to set out], unless I might approach it on New Year's morn, for all the lands within England, etc. 1074 *in spenne* = *in space* = in the interval = meanwhile. See line 1503.
- P. 37. l. 1160 *slentyng of arwes*. Sir F. Madden reads *sloutyng*.  
"Of drawyn swerdis *slentyng* to and fra,  
The brycht mettale, and othir armouris seir,  
Quharon the sonnys blenkis betis cleir,  
Glitteris and schane, and vnder bemys brycht  
Castis ane new twynklyng or a lemand lyoht."  
(G. Douglas' *Æneid*, Vol. i., p. 421.)

- P. 41. l. 1281 *let lyk* = appeared pleased.  
 1283 *þa; I were burde bryttest, þe burde in mynde hade*, etc.  
 The sense requires us to read :  
*þa; ho were burde bryttest, þe burne in mynde hade*, etc.  
*i.e.*, Though she were lady fairest, the knight in mind had, etc.
- P. 46. l. 1440 *Long sythen [seuered] for þe soulder þat wiȝt for-olde*  
 Long since separated from the *soulder* or herd that fierce (one) for-aged  
 (grew very old).  
 "Now to speke of the boore, the fyrste year he is  
 A pygge of the *soulder* callyd, as haue I blys;  
 The secounde yere an hogge, and soo shall he be,  
 And an hoggestere, whan he is of yeres thre;  
 And when he is foure yere, a boor shall he be,  
 From the *soulder* of the swyne thenne departyth he;  
 A synguler is he soo, for alone he woll go."  
 (Book of St. Alban's, ed. 1496, sig. d., i.)
- P. 52. l. 1623 A verb seems wanting after *lowde*.
- P. 55. l. 1710 *a strothe rande* = a rugged path. Cf. the phrases *tene groue*, l. 1707;  
*roȝe groue*, l. 1898. 1729 *bi lag = be-lagh (?) = below (?)*.  
 1719 *Thenne wat; hit lif vpon list*, etc.  
 Should we not read :  
*Thenne wat; hit list vpon lif*, etc.  
*i.e.*, Then was there joy in life, etc.
- P. 57. l. 1780 *lyf = lef (?)*, beloved (one).
- P. 60. l. 1869 *Ho hat; kyst þe knyȝt so toȝt*.  
 She has kissed the knight so courteous.  
 Sir F. Madden explains *toȝt*, promptly. *Toȝt* seems to be the same as the  
 Northumbrian *taght* in the following extract from the "Morte Arthure":  
 "There come in at the fyrste course, before the kyng seluene,  
 Bare hevedys that ware bryghte, burnyste with sylver,  
 Alle with *taghte* mene and *towne* in togers fulle ryche."—(p. 15.)  
 The word *towne* (well-behaved) still exists in *wan-ton*, the original meaning  
 of which was ill-mannered, ill-bred.
- P. 61. l. 1909 *bray hounde; = brap hounde; i.e.* fierce hounds.
- P. 64. l. 1995 *He hat; nere þat he soȝt = He wat; nere þat he soȝt = He was near to*  
*that which he sought*.
- P. 69. l. 2160 *gedere; þe rake* = takes the path or way.  
 2167 *þe skwe; of þe scowtes skayued hym þoȝt*.  
 The shadows of the hills appeared wild (desolate) to him.  
 Sir F. Madden reads *skayned*, of which he gives no explanation. *Skayued*  
 = *skayfed*, seems to be the N. Prov. English *soafe*, wild. Scotch *schawie*,  
 wild, mad. O.N. *skeifr*. Sw. *skef*, awry, distorted.



- P. 70. l. 2204 *ronge*=clattered.

2211

*Drede dot; me no lote=*

No noise shall cause me to dread (fear).

- P. 75. l. 2357

*& þer-for þat tappe ta þe.*

And therefore take thee that tap.

*ta þe*=take thee. Sir F. Madden reads *tape=taketh*. See page 14, l. 413, where *to þe* rhymes with *sothe*. We have no imperatives in *th* in this poem.

- P. 76. l. 2401 *We schyn reuel*, etc. Sir F. Madden reads *wasch yn reuel*. But *schyn*=shall. See Glossary to "Alliterative Poems."

- P. 79. l. 2474 *on-coolde=on-colde=coldly=sorrowfully*. 2489 *in-sounde=soundly*, well. Cf. *in-blande*=together; *in-lyche*, alike; *in-mydder*, amidst.

## GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[For all words marked thus (\*) the reader is referred to the Glossary to *Early English Alliterative Poems*.]

- Abataylment, battlement, 790.  
 Abloy, an exclamation used in hunting; equivalent to On! on! 1174. O.Fr. *ablo*.  
 Abof, above, 73, 112, 153.  
 Abouen, above, 2217.  
 Achaufed, warmed, 883.  
 Acheue, to obtain, arrive, 1107, 1838.  
 Acheued, *pret.* 1081, 1857.  
 Acoles, embraces, 1936.  
 Acolen, *pl. pres.* embrace, 2472.  
 Acorde, 2406.  
 Adoun, down, 254.  
 Afyaunce, trust, confidence, 642.  
 After, afterwards, 218.  
 \*Aghlich, fearful, dreadful, 136.  
 Aker, field, plain, 1421. Sir F. Madden proposes to read *vch a* =every (each a).  
 Alce=alse, also, likewise, 2492.  
 Alder, elder, 973.  
 Alder-truest, truest of all, 1486.  
 Alderes=elders, ancestors, 95.  
 Algate, every way, 141.  
 Al-hal-day, All-hallows day, 1st November, 536.  
 Al one, alone, 735, 2155. *Al hym one*=*Al his one*, by himself, 749, 1048.  
 A-losed, praised, 1512. See *Los, Lose*.  
 Als, } also, likewise, 270, 720,  
 Alse, } 933, 1627.  
 Al-same, together, 673.  
 Alther-grattest, greatest of all, 1441.  
 Aluisch = elvish, having preternatural power. A.S. *ælf, elf*, an elf, sprite, genius.  
 Amende, 898.  
 Amongez, amongst, 1361.  
 Amount, 1197.  
 Anamayld, enamelled, 169.  
 And=an, if, 1245, 1509, 1647.  
 Ane, one, 223.  
 A-nelede, attacked, worried, 723. Sir F. Madden renders it *approached*.  
 Angardez, arrogance, 681.  
 Anious, wearisome, sorrowful, fatiguing, 535. O.Fr. *anioux, anieuso*. Lat. *anxius*.  
 Another, otherwise, 1268.  
 Apendes, } appertains, belongs,  
 Apendez, } 623, 913.  
 Apert, openly, manifestly, 154, 2392.  
 Apparayl, 600, 1891.  
 Aray, 163.  
 Are, ere, before, previously, 239, 1632.  
 A-rered, retreated, 1902.

Arewes, } arrows, 1160, 1455,  
 Arwes, } 1460.  
 Arwe, }  
 Armure, 586.  
 Arn, are (*pl. pres.*), 280, 1094.  
 Arsounes, } saddle-bows, 171, 602.  
 Arsoun, }  
 \*Arȝe, timid, fearful, 241.  
 Arȝe, *vb.* to wax timid, 2301.  
 Arȝed, waxed timid, 1463, 2271.  
 Arȝe, waxest timid, 2277.  
 Asay, the point in the breast of  
 the buck, at which the hunter's  
 knife was inserted, to make trial  
 of the animal's fatness, 1328.  
 Asay, try, tempt, 2362.  
 \*Ascryed, shouted, 1153.  
 \*Aske, ashes, 2.  
 Askynge, request, 323, 349.  
 Asoyled, absolved, 1883.  
 Aspye, to discover, 1199.  
 Assant, assault, 1.  
 As-swythe, quickly, 1400.  
 \*As-tit, } at once, suddenly, 31,  
 As-tyt, } 1210. See *Tit*, *Tite*.  
 At, for, 648; of, 703.  
 \*Athel, noble, good, 5, 171, 241,  
 904, 1654, 2466.  
 Ather=ayther, either, 1357.  
 \*Attle, *vb.* aim, design, purpose, 27.  
 Attled, *pret.* of attle, 2263.  
 \*At-waped, escaped, 1167. See  
*Wapped*.  
 Auen, }  
 Awen, } own, 10, 293, 836.  
 Aune, }  
 \*Auinant = avinaunt, avenaunt,  
 pleasantly, 806.  
 Aumayl, enamel, 236.  
 Auncian, *adj.* aged, 1001, 2463;  
*sb.* aged (one), 948.  
 \*Aunter, adventure, 27, 29, 2522.  
 Auntere, (*pl.*), 2527.  
 Auntered, ventured, 1516.  
 Auther, either, 88, 702.  
 A-vaners, portions of the nombles  
 of a deer, which lay near the

neck; a term used in wood-  
craft, 1342.

"Then dresse the nombles, fyrst that  
ye recke;

Downe the *auancers* kerue, that cleuyth  
to the neck;

And down wyth the bol-throte put  
theym anone."

(Boke of St. Alban's, 1496, sig. d. iv.)

"One croke of the nombles lyeth  
euermore

Under the throte-bolle of the beest  
before,

That callyd is *auancers*, whoso can  
theym kenne."

(*Ibid.*, sig. e. i.)

Auentale, the open and moveable  
portion of the helmet which  
covered the mouth, for the pur-  
pose of respiration, 608.

"He brayedez one a bacenett, bur-  
neschte of syluer,

The beste that was in Basille, wyth  
bordurs ryche;

The creste and the coronalle enclosed  
so faire,

Wyth clasppis of clere golde, couched  
wyth stones;

The vesare, the *aventaille*, enarmede so  
faire,

Voyde with owttyn vice, with wyn-  
dowes of syluer."

(*Morte Arthure*, p. 77.)

"The vesere, the *auentaille*, his ves-  
turis ryche,

Wyth the valyant blode was verrede  
alle over."

(*Ibid.*, p. 215.)

Early writers frequently use this  
term for the whole front of the  
helmet, including the visor. In  
the prose French romances of the  
Round Table, *ventaille* is a dis-  
tinct piece of armour, and put  
on before the helmet.

Auenturus, adventurous, 93.

Auenturus, adventures, 95, 491.

Auinant, pleasantly, 806.

A-vyse, } think, devise, 45, 1389.

Awyse, }  
Auyseed, viewed, observed, 771.

A-wharf, turned, whirled round, 2220. A.S. *a-hweorfan*, to bend (*pret.* *a-hwearf.*)

Ax, 208.

Ay, ever, 26, 73, 128, 167, 893.

Ayled, 438.

Ay-quere, } everywhere, 599, 629,

Ay-where, } 745, 800.

Ayther, either, 841, 939, 1307.

Ayayn, } towards, 815, 971;

Ayaynes, } against, 1456, 1661.

Ayayne, }

\*Ayle, fearless, 2335. See *Aghlich*.

Ayt, ayt, owned, possessed (the *pret.* of *awe*, to own, owe), 767, 843, 1775, 1941.

Bade, abode, tarried, 1699.

Baldly, boldly, 376.

\*Bale, harm, evil, grief, 2041, 2419.

Bale, belly, 1333. O.H.G. *balg*.

Bale, bowels, 1333.

Balze, round or smooth, 2032, 2172.

"*Balheo* or *pleyn* (*balwe* or *playne*, P.) *Planus*." (Prompt. Parv.)

Bande, 192.

Baner, 117.

Barayne, barren, applied to hinds not gravid, 1320.

Barbe, edge of an axe, 2310.

Barbez, points of arrows, 1457.

Barbican, out-work or tower of a castle, 793.

\*Bare, *adj.* mere, unconditional, 277. In l. 1141 it is applied to the notes or blasts of a horn, and seems to mean *short* or *without rechte*; *adv.* 465; "*bare pre daye*," 1066.

Barely, unconditionally, certainly, 548.

Baret, strife, contest, 21, 353, 2115; grief, 752.

Bargayn, 1112.

Barlay, Sir F. M. says, is apparently a corruption of the

French *par loi*, 296. Is it a corruption of the phrase, "by our lady," i.e. the Virgin Mary?

Barred, striped diagonally, 159.

Barres, diagonal stripes, 182.

Bastel-roue, turreted or castellated roofs; *roue* = roofs.

Bate, debate, conflict, 1461. A.S. *bate*, contention.

Bauderyk, the strap by which the shield was suspended round the neck, 621; belt or lace, 2486. M.H.G. *balderich*.

Bawe, bow of a saddle (?), 435.

Bawe-men, bowmen, 1564.

Bay, round, 967. A.S. *bagan*, to bend.

Bay, } bay or baiting of a wild

Baye, } boar, when attacked by dogs, 1450, 1564, 1582.

Bayed, baited, barked at, 1142, 1362, 1603.

Bayen (3d *pers. pl.*), bay, bark at, 1909.

\*Bayn, } prompt, ready, obedient,

Bayne, } 1092, 2158.

Bayst, abashed, 37. Fr. *abaisser*.

Baythe, to grant (?), 327; to consent, 1404, 1840.

Be, by, 652, 1216.

Beau, fair, 1222.

Be-com, went, 460.

Bedde, } offered, 1824, 1834, 2248.

Bede, }

Beddez, bids, 1374.

Beddyng, 853.

Bede, bade, 1437, 2090.

Bede, offer, proffer, 374, 382, 2322.

A.S. *beodan*, to offer.

Be-knewe, acknowledge.

Beknownen, acknowledged, 2391.

Belde, courage, valour, 650. A.S. *byld*.

Bele-chere, good company (*cheer*) or presence.

Belef, badge (?), 2486, 2517.

Bellez, bells, 195.

- Belt, 162.  
 Bende, band, bond, 2505, 2517.  
 Bende, bent, 305, 2224; put down, 2105.  
 Bene, to be, 141; are or will be, 1646.  
 \*Bene (another form of *bain*?), fair, well, 2402, 2475.  
 \*Bent, plain, field (or uplands?), 353, 1465, 1599, 2115, 2233, 2338; "*bent-field*," 1136.  
 Ber, beer, 129.  
 Ber, } bore, carried, 637, 1913.  
 Bere, }  
 Berdle, 280.  
 Ber, } hill, mount, 2172, 2178.  
 Berje, }  
 Best, beast, animal, 1436.  
 \*Bete, to kindle, 1367.  
 Beten, worked, embroidered, 78, 1833, 2028. Fr. *battu*.  
 Beuerage, drink, liquor, 1112, 1409.  
 Beuer-hwed = beaver-hued, colour of a beaver (?), 845.  
 Bide, } abide, endure, 374, 520,  
 Byde, } 1582, 2041.  
 Bide, } abides, awaits, 376.  
 Byde, }  
 Bifalle, 382.  
 Biforne, before, 123.  
 Big, bold, 354.  
 \*Biges, builds, 9.  
 \*Bigged, } built, inhabited, 20.  
 Bygged, }  
 \*Bigly, } loudly, 1141; deeply,  
 \*Bygly, } severely, 1162; boldly, 1584.  
 Bigræuen, engraved, 216.  
 Bi-grypte = be-gripped, grasped, 214.  
 Bihalden, } = beholden, indebted,  
 Biholde, } 1557, 1842.  
 Bi-hond, forthwith, 67.  
 Bihoues, 1065.  
 Bikende, commended, 596, 1982.  
 Biknowe, acknowledge, 2385.  
 Biknowe, acknowledges, 2495.  
 \*Biliue, } quickly, immediately,  
 Bilyue, } 132, 1128, 1136, 1171,  
 Bylyue, } 1715.  
 Bisemed, befitted, became, 622, 2035.  
 Biseme, = beseems, befits. 1612, 2191.  
 Bisides, } = besides, on the side,  
 Bisyde, } 76, 109, 856.  
 Bisied, agitated, 89.  
 Bisoyt, besought, 96.  
 Bitidde, befell, 2522.  
 Bitte, } the steel part of an axe,  
 Bytte, } 2224, 2310.  
 \*Bi-wyled, beguiled, 2425.  
 \*Blande, intermixed, blended; phrase "*in blande*," together, 1205, 1931.  
 Blasoun, shield of arms, 828.  
 Blaunner, } a species of fur (?),  
 Blaunier, } 155, 573, 856, 1931.  
 Is it connected with *lawn*?—if so, it would signify a species of fine linen.  
 \*Bleaunt, } a robe or mantle (of fine  
 Bleeant, } linen), 879, 1928.  
 Blenched, receded, drew back, 1715.  
 Blende = blent, mingled, blended, 1361, 1610, 2371.  
 Blenk, to shine, 2315. Du. *blincken*, to shine, glitter. Ger. *blinken*, twinkle, glitter.  
 Blenked, shone, 799.  
 Blered, 963.  
 Blessing, 370.  
 \*Blonk, } a steed, literally, a  
 Blonkke, } white horse, 434, 785, 1581.  
 Blonkes, } horses, 1128, 1693.  
 Blonkkes, }  
 \*Blubred = foamed, blubbered, applied to a stream of water, 2174.  
 Bluk = trunk, 440.  
 Blunder, confusion, trouble, 18.  
 \*Blunk, steed, 440. See *Blonk*.  
 \*Blusch, sb. look, 520.  
 Blusched, looked, 650, 793.

Blusschande=blushing, glittering, 1819.

Blw, } blew, 1141, 1362.  
Blwe, }

Blwe, blue, 1928.

\*Blycande, } shining, glittering,  
Blykkande, } 305, 2485.

Blykked, shone, glistened, 429.

Blynnce, cease, 2322.

Blysse, fortune, prosperity, 18.

Blyþe, gay, bright, 155.

\*Bobbaunce, boast, 9.

Bobbe, branch, 206.

Bode, bidding, proffer, 852, 1824.  
A.S. *bod*.

\*Bode, abode, 785, 1564.

\*Boden, *pass. part.* prayed, asked, 327. A.S. *beodan* (*p.p. boden*), to bid, offer.

Bolde, *sb.* bold (one), 21.

\*Bole, trunk of a tree, 766.

\*Bolne, to swell, 512.

Bonchef, gaiety (or perhaps innocence, purity), 1764.

\*Bone, prayer, request, 327.

Bone-hostel, lodging, 776.

\*Bonk, bank, height, 511, 700, 710, 785, 1571.

\*Bonkkes, } heights, 14, 1562,  
Bonkke, } 2077.

Bord, } table, 481.

Borde, }  
Borde, border, 610; *bordes* (*pl.*) 159.

\*Borde;=bourde; (?), jests (?), 1954.

\*Borelych=burly, huge, strong, 766, 2148, 2224.

\*Borne=bourn, stream, 731, 1570, 2174.

Bornyst, } burnished, 212, 582.  
Burnyst, }

\*Bor;, }  
Borþe, } =burgh, city, castle, 2,  
Bur;, } 9, 259, 843, 1092.  
Burþe, }

Bot-if, unless, 1782.

Bot, } bit, wounded, pierced, 426,  
Bote, } 1162, 1562.

Bothem, bottom, 2145.

Botoun;, buttons, 220.

\*Boun, } ready, prompt, obedient,  
Boune, } 548, 852, 1311, 1693.

Bour, chamber, 853, 1519.

\*Bourde, sport, joke, 1409.

Bourde;, jokes, 1212.

Bourded, joked, 1217.

Bourdyng, *sb.* joke, sport, 1404.

Bout, } without, 361, 1285, 1444.  
Boute, }

\*Boþe, to move, rise, go, 344, 1220.

Boþed (*pret.* of *boþe*), 481, 550, 1189, 2524.

Boþen (*pres. pl.* of *boþe*), 434, 1311, 2077.

\*Boþes, goes, 2178.

Boþe;, boughs, 765, 2077.

Brace, armour for the arms, 582.

Braches, } hounds, 1142, 1563,  
Brache;, } 1610. *Brache* is said

to signify originally a bitch hound—the feminine of *rache*, a foot-scenting hound (Jam.).

Brachetes, hounds, 1603.

Brad, roasted, 891. A.S. *brædan*, to roast (*pret.* *brædde*; *p.p.* *gebræd*).

\*Bradde, extended, 1928. See *Braide*.

\*Braides, } draws, 621, 1584, 1609,  
Braydes, } 1901.  
Brayde;, }

Brawden, woven, 177, 580.

Brawen, } = *brawn*, or flesh of a  
Brawne, } wild boar, 1611, 1631.

Bray, an error for *brath*, bold (?), 1909.

\*Brayde, started, 429; threw, 2377; drew, 1399; drawn, thrown, 2069.

Brayden, embroidered, 220, 1883.

Brayn-wod, mad, violent, 286, 1461, 1580.

Bredden (*pl. pret.*) = *bred*, flourish-ed, 21.

- \*Brede, bounds, limits, 2071. A.S.  
*brerd.*
- \*Brem, } fierce, bold, 1142, 1155,  
 Breme, } 1580, 2200; loud, shrill,  
 1601; rugged, 2145.
- \*Breme, } quickly, boldly, 779,  
 Bremly, } 781; fiercely, 509,  
 Bremely, } 1598, 2233, 2319.  
 Bremlych, }
- Brende, } burnt, burnished, 2,  
 Brenned, } 195, 832, 875, 2165.  
 Brennez, burns, 1609.
- \*Brent, high, 2165.
- \*Bresed, rough, 305.
- Brether, brethren, 39.
- \*Breue, tell, inform, speak, 1393,  
 1488.
- Breued, marked, 1436; written,  
 2521.
- Britned, broken or cut in pieces,  
 2, 680, 1339.
- Britne, breaks, cuts, 1611. A.S.  
*bryt-an*, to break.
- Bronde, } sword, 561, 588, 828,  
 Bront } 1584.
- Bronde, = brands, embers, 2.
- \*Brothe, angry, fierce, 2233.
- \*Brothely, angrily, violently, 2377.
- Brother-hede, brotherhood, 2516.
- Broun, *sb.* brown (deer), 1162.
- Browe, brow, 1457.
- Brojes, } brows, 305, 961.  
 Brojez, }
- Bruny, cuirass, 861, 2012, 2013.  
 A.S. *byrne*.
- Brusten, burst, 1166.
- Bryddes, } birds, 166, 509, 746.  
 Bryddez, }
- Brygge, bridge, 779, 781.
- \*Brymme, flood, river, 2172.
- Bugle, 1136.
- Bult, built, 25.
- \*Bur, blow, 290, 374, 548, 2322;  
 force, 2261.
- \*Burde, lady, 613, 752, 961.
- Burdes, } ladies, 942, 1232, 1373.  
 Burdez, }
- \*Burde, ought, behoved, 2278, 2428.
- \*Burn, } man, knight, noble, 20,  
 Burne, } 73, 337.
- Burnes, } men, 259, 272, 481.  
 Burnez, }
- Burnyst, 212.
- \*Busk, array, 1220; prepare, 2248,  
 2284.
- Busked, went, 1411; prepared,  
 1693.
- Busken (*pl. pres.*), prepare, 509,  
 1128.
- Buskes, } goes, 1136, 1448, 2476.  
 Buskez, }
- Busk, bush, 182.
- Buskez, bushes, 1437.
- Busy, to be active, 1066.
- Busyly, 68.
- Buttokez, 967.
- Bycome, became, 6.
- Bycomes, becomes, befits, 471.
- Byforne, before, 1375, 1577.
- Byhode, behoved, 717.
- Bykende, commended, 569, 1982.
- Bykennen, commend, 1307.
- Bylde, 509.
- Byled, boiled, 2082.
- Bytoknyng, token, 626.
- Cach, to catch, take, acquire, 133;  
 to go, 1794.
- Cacheres = catchers, hunters, 1139.
- Cachez (*pres. tense* of *cach*), 368,  
 2175.
- Can (*auxiliary vb. of past tense*),  
 340, 1042.
- Capados, hood or close cap, from  
 the Fr. *cap-d-dos*, 186, 572.
- \*Caple, horse, 2175.
- Carande, sorrowing, anxious, 674,  
 750.
- Care, grief, concern, 1979, 2379.
- Carnelez, battlements, embrasures,  
 801.
- Caroles, 43.
- Carp, speech, conversation.

- Carp, } to say, tell, speak, 263,  
 Karp, } 696, 704.  
 Carped, told, spoke, 1088.  
 Carpe, tells, speaks, 377, 1979.  
 \*Carye = cayre, goes, 2120.  
 Cast, to speak, address, 249.  
 Castes, deeds, manners, 1295. See  
*Costes*.  
 Caeloun, = cauelacioun, disputes,  
 683, 2275. O.Fr. *cavellation*.  
 Cemmed = cammed (?), folded,  
 twisted, 188. O.E. *cam*, bent,  
 crooked.  
 Cercle, circle around the helmet,  
 615.  
 Chaffer, merchandise, 1647, 1939.  
 Chambre, 48.  
 Chaplayne, 930.  
 Charcole, 875.  
 Charg, matter, 1940.  
 Charge, vb. 863.  
 Chargeaunt, dangerous (?), 1604.  
 \*Charre, return, 1678.  
 Charred, led, turned, 850, 1143.  
 Charres, business; task, 1674.  
 Chastysed, 1143.  
 Chauncely, accidentally, 778.  
 Chaunsel, 946.  
 Chauntre, religious service, 63.  
 O.F. *chanterie*.  
 Chefly, } speedily (?), 850, 883,  
 Cheuely, } 978, 1940.  
 Chek, fortune, 1107, 1857.  
 Chekke, ill fortune (?), 2195.  
 Chemne (=chimney), fireplace, 978.  
 Chepe, } bargain, terms of buying  
 Chepe, } or selling, or goods  
 sold, 1939, 1940, 1941.  
 Chepen, to bargain, 1271.  
 \*Cher, } countenance, behaviour,  
 Chere, } spirits, 562, 711, 883,  
 1745, 2169, 2496; entertain-  
 ment, 1259.  
 Ches (=chose), perceived, dis-  
 cerned, 798, 946.  
 \*Cheue, obtain, 1271; to arrive,  
 1676.  
 Cheued, obtained, 1390; came, 63.  
 Cheucaunce, } booty, gain, 1390,  
 Cheuisaunce, } 1406, 1678, 1939.  
 Cheuysaunce, } O.Fr. *cheuissance*.  
 Cheyer, chair, 875.  
 Child-gered, of childish manners,  
 86 (literally = dressed as a child).  
 \*Chorle, churl, 2107.  
 Chosen (the gate), took the way,  
 930.  
 "Towarde; Chartris they *chese* these  
 cheualrous knyghttez."  
 (Morte Arthure, p. 136.)  
 Chylder, children, 280.  
 Chymbled, folded (?), 958. Is it  
 connected with Eng. *chymb*, from  
 Du. *kimme*, rim or edge of a  
 vase?  
 Clad, covered, 885.  
 Clamberande, clustering, 1722.  
 Clambered, clustered, joined to-  
 gether, 801.  
 Clanly, wholly, 393.  
 Clanness, chastity, purity, 653.  
 Clatterande (=clattering), bub-  
 bling, 731.  
 Clattered, resounded, 1722.  
 Clayme, 293.  
 Clene, fair, 163; wholly, 1298.  
 Clenge (=clings), contracts, or  
 causes to shrink with cold, 505,  
 2078.  
 Clenged, 1694, *pret.* of *Clenge*.  
 Clepes, calls, 1310.  
 Cler, } fine, fair, bright, beautiful,  
 Clere, } noble, 631, 942, 954,  
 1489.  
 Clergye, erudition, 2447.  
 Clomben, climbed, 2078.  
 Close, 186.  
 Closet, 934.  
 Cloyster, 804.  
 \*Cofly, quickly, 2011.  
 Colen, to cool, assuage, 1253.  
 Com, } came (*pl.* *comen*), 116,  
 Come, } 824, 942, 1004.  
 Comaunde, (*imp.*) commend, 2411.



- Comly, } *adj.* comely, fair, 469,  
 Comlych, } 539; used substan-  
                   tively, 674, 1755; used ad-  
                   verbially, 648, 1307, 1629, 1794.  
 Comlyly, courteously, 974, 1118,  
 1389.  
 Comloker, comelier, 869.  
 Comlokest, most comely, 52, 81,  
 767.  
 Compass, form, stature, 944.  
 Compast, 1196.  
 Company, 556, 1011.  
 Con, }  
 Conne, } can, 2455.  
 Con, } an auxiliary vb. (of the  
 Conne, } past tense), 230, 274,  
           362, 841, 993, 1206.  
 Conne, knows, 1267, 1483.  
 Conable (=convenable), famous, or  
           accomplished, 2450. O.Fr. *co-  
           vinable*.  
 Concience, 1196.  
 Conquestes, 311.  
 Conneyed, 596.  
 Conysaunce, badge, cognisance,  
 2026.  
 \*Coprournes, capitals, 797.  
 Corbeles, raven's, 1355.  
 Corner, 1185.  
 Cors, body, 1297.  
 Cors, course, 116.  
 Corsedest, most cursed, 2196.  
 Corsour, 1583.  
 Cortays, } courteous, 276, 467,  
 Cortayse, } 539.  
 Cortaysy, } courtesy, 247, 263,  
 Cortaysye, } 1300.  
 Cortaysly, courteously, 775, 903.  
 Cortyn, curtain, 854, 1185.  
 Cortyned, 1181.  
 Coruon, carved, 797.  
 Cosse, kiss, 1300.  
 Cosses, }  
 Cosse, } kisses, 2351, 2360.  
 Cost, manner, business, 546.  
 Costes, } manners, qualities, vir-  
 Coste, } tues, 944, 1272, 1483,  
           1489, 2360, 2495; labours, 750.  
 Icel. *kostr*, habits, character, con-  
           ditions. Ger. *kust*, art.  
 Coste, coasts, 1696.  
 Cosyn, 372.  
 Cote, 152, 335.  
 Cothe, quoth, 776.  
 Coundue, to conduct, guide, 1972.  
       O.Fr. *conduire*.  
 Coundutes, songs, 1655. O.Fr. *con-  
           duts*.  
 Counseyl, 557.  
 Countenaunce, custom, 100, 1490.  
 Couples, 1147.  
 Cource, 135.  
 Couth, } (=could), knew, 45,  
 Couthe, } 1125, 1139, 1389,  
 Cowthe, } 1486; known, 1490.  
 Couthly, familiarly, 937.  
 Couenaunt, 393.  
 Couertor, } cover or trapping of a  
 Couertour, } horse, 602; canopy  
                   of a bed, 1181.  
 Couertorez, canopies, 855.  
 Cowpled, 1139.  
 Cowters, pieces of plate for the  
           elbows, 583. Fr. *coudière*, la  
           partie qui couvre la *coude*.  
 Coynt, } curious, quaint, 877;  
 Koynt, } skilful, cunning, 1525.  
 Coyntly, }  
 Coyntlych, } cunningly, 578, 934,  
 Koyntly, } 2413.  
 Cojed = coughed, 307.  
 Crabbed, 502.  
 Crafty, skilfully made, 572.  
 Crakkande, resounding, loud, 1166.  
 Crakkyng, blast, blowing, 116.  
 Cresped, crisped, 188.  
 Crathayn, craven, coward, 1773.  
       "Becum thou coward *crawdoun* re-  
           cryand."  
       (G. Douglas, Vol. ii., p. 673.)  
 Crest, top of a rock, 731.  
 Creuisse, fissure, cavity, 2183.  
 Criande, crying, 1088.  
 Croked, bent aside, 653.

Cropore, } crupper, 168, 602.  
 Cropure, }  
 Croys, cross, 643.  
 Crystenmas, Christmas, 985.  
 Cummen, come, 60, 62.

Dabate=debate, strife, 2041.  
 Daly, to dally, 1253.  
 Dalt, dealt, fared, passed away  
 time, 452, 1664, 2449.  
 Dalten (*pret. pl.*), 1114.  
 Dallyaunce, 1012.  
 Dar, dare, 287.  
 \*Dare, to manifest fear, tremble,  
 315, 2258.  
 Daunse, 1024.  
 Daunsyng, 47.  
 \*Dawed (=dowed), availed, pro-  
 fitted, 1805.  
 Daylyeden, dallied, 1114.  
 Daynté, 121, 1250.  
 Debate, 68.  
 Debetande, debating, 2179.  
 \*Debonerte, good manners, polite-  
 ness.  
 \*Dece, } dais or table of state, 61,  
 Des, } 75, 222, 250.  
 Dese, }  
 Defence, caution, 1282.  
 Defende, forbidden, 1156.  
 Dele, to deal (a blow), 295, 560;  
 to give, bestow, 1085, 2192; to  
 partake, 1968.  
 Dele, the devil, 2188.  
 Delen, (*pres. pl.*) deal, 1266.  
 Deles, deals, 397.  
 Delful, doleful, 560.  
 Deliuier, active, nimble, 2343.  
 Deliuierly, quickly, 2009.  
 Delyuer, 851.  
 Demay, dismay, 470.  
 \*Deme, to judge, deem, 246, 1322,  
 2183.  
 Demed, esteemed, judged, deter-  
 mined, 240, 1089, 1668.  
 Demen (*pres. pl.*) judge, think fit,  
 1082, 1529.

Denaye, deny, refuse, 1497.  
 Denayed, refused, 1493.  
 Dene, Danish, 2223.  
 Depaynt, } deposited, 620, 647.  
 Depaynted, }  
 Departed, severed, divided, 1335.  
 Deprece, release, 1219.  
 Depreced, } vanquished, bore down,  
 Depressed, } 6, 1770.  
 Dere, deer, beasts of chase, 1151,  
 1322.  
 Dere, joyful, delightful, 92, 1012,  
 1026, 1047; worthy, 47; pre-  
 cious, costly, 75, 121, 193, 571.  
 Used substantively=worthy, no-  
 ble, honourable (one), 678, 928.  
 \*Dere, hurtful, injurious, 564.  
 Dered, injured, 1460.  
 Derely, joyfully, honourably, 817,  
 1031, 1253, 1327, 1559.  
 \*Derf, strong, stern, severe, active,  
 564, 1000, 1233, 1492.  
 \*Derfly, } quickly, suddenly,  
 Deruely, } firmly, 1183, 2334.  
 \*Derne, secret, privy, 1012, 1047.  
 Dernly, secretly, silently, 1188,  
 2334. Should we not read *deruly*,  
*i.e.*, quickly, smartly?  
 Derrest, noblest, 445, 483.  
 \*Derue=derf, strong, great, 558.  
 Derworthly, honourably, 114.  
 Destines, 564.  
 Destyne, 996.  
 Deve, to confound, 1286. Sc. *devo*,  
 to confound, stupefy.  
 Deuise, 92.  
 Deuys, 617.  
 Dew, 519.  
 Deje, die, 996.  
 Diamante, diamonds, 617.  
 Digne, } worthy, 1316.  
 Dyngne, }  
 \*Dille, dull, foolish, 1529.  
 Disceuer, discover, 1862.  
 Discrye, describe, 81.  
 Diskouere, 418.  
 Dismay, 336.

- Display, 955.  
 Displese, 2489.  
 Dispoyle, undress, 860.  
 Disserue, deserve, 452.  
 Disstrye, destroys, 2375.  
 \*Dit, fastened, 1233.  
 \*Dyt, pronounce, make, 295; prepared, \*dressed, placed, made ready, 114, 678, 994, 1559, 1884, 1223, 1689.  
 Do, place, lay, 1492; "*dos her forth*" = goes out, 1308; *dos* (*imp.*), do thou, 1533.  
 \*Doel, } sorrow, torment, 558.  
 Dole, }  
 Dok, tail, 193. O.N. *dockr.*  
 \*Dole, part, 719.  
 \*Dom, } judgment, sentence, 296,  
 Dome, } 1216, 1968.  
 Donkande, moistening, damp; from *donk, dank*, moist, wet.  
 Doser, back of a seat, 478.  
 \*Doted, became foolish, demented, 1151, 1956.  
 Dotz, does, 2211.  
 Double, }  
 Doubble, } 61, 483.  
 Doute, fear, 246, 442.  
 Douteles, 725.  
 \*Douth, } people, nobles, 61, 1365,  
 Douthe, } 1415, 1956.  
 Dowelle, dwell, 566.  
 Draueled, slumbered fitfully, 1750.  
 A.S. *dréfan*, to disturb, trouble.  
 "Of *dreflyng* and *dremys* quhat dow (avails) it to endite?"  
 (G. Douglas, vol. i., p. 447.)  
 Draze, draws, 1031.  
 Drajt, drawbridge, 817.  
 Drechch, trouble, hurt (*not* delay, as Sir F. Madden suggests), 1972.  
 A.S. *drécan*, to trouble, vex, oppress. See Glossary to Ham-pole.  
 Dredles, void of dread, 2334.  
 \*Dreped, put to death, 725.  
 Dres, to prepare, go, 474.  
 Dressed, placed, set, 75, 2033; went, rose, 1415, 2009.  
 Dresses, } prepares, rises, 417, 445,  
 Dresse, } 566.  
 \*Dre, fierce, bold, 1750; used ad-verbially, 2263.  
 \*Drely, vigorously, 1026.  
 Driuande, driving, advancing quickly, 222.  
 Drof, drove, rushed, passed, 786, 1151, 1176.  
 Dronken (*pret. pl.*) drank, 1025, 1668.  
 Drope, 519.  
 Drouping, } uneasy, fitful slumber,  
 Drowning, } 1748, 1750. We often meet in O.E. works with the phrase "*to drowpe* and *dare*" = to be troubled and affrighted. O.N. *driupr*, troubled. See *Drove* in Glossary to "Alliterative Poems."  
 Dro, } drew, 1188, 1463.  
 Drozen, }  
 Drozt = drought, dryness, 523.  
 \*Drury, } amour, love, love-token,  
 Drwrye, } 1507, 1517, 1805, 2033, 2449.  
 \*Drye, endure, suffer, 202, 560.  
 \*Drye, stern, immovable, 335; enduring, tough, 724, 1460.  
 \*Drytyn, the Lord, 724, 996, 1548.  
 \*Dubbed, ornamented, dressed, clad, 75, 193, 571.  
 Dublet, 571.  
 \*Dulful, doleful, grievous, 1517.  
 \*Dunt, } blow, *dint*, 452, 1286.  
 Dunte, }  
 Dust, 523.  
 Dut, mirth (?), 1020.  
 Dut, } doubted, feared, 222, 784,  
 Dutte, } 2257.  
 Du,ty (=doughty), 724.  
 \*Dyn, noise, revelry, 47.  
 Dynne, (=dynge?), strikes, 2105.  
 \*Dynt, blow, stroke, 315, 560, 2105.

Dynte, } blows, 336, 202, 1460.

Dyntte, }  
Dyrt. See *Dyrt*.

Efte, afterwards, 641, 700, 788, 2388.

Eft-sone, } forthwith, there-  
Efter-sone, } after, 1640, 2417.

\*Egge, edge, 212. Used for the axe itself, 2392.

Eindele, (=endele), 629.

Eke, also, 90.

Elbowe, 184.

\*Elde, age, 844, 1520.

Elle, if that, 295.

Em, } uncle, 356, 543. A.S. *edm*.  
Eme, }

\*Eubaned, supported (?), 790.

Embelyse, to embellish, 1034.

Enbrauded, } embroidered, adorn-  
Enbrawd, } ed, 78, 166, 606,  
Enbrawd, } 856.

Enclyne, 340.

Endite, put (to death), 1600.

Enesed, entangled, clotted (?), 184.

Sir F. Madden suggests *covered*.

We might read *enused*=bordered,  
from A.S. *efese*, rim, border.

Enfoubled, wrapt up, 959.

Enker, bright (applied to colour),  
150, 2477. The same root enters  
into O.E. and Sc. *enkerly*,  
quickly, vigorously.

\*Ennourned, } adorned, 634, 2027.  
Ennurned, }

Enquest, inquiry, 1056.

Entayled, interwoven, embroidered,  
612.

Enterlude, 472.

Entyse, acquire, 2436.

Er, ere, before, previously, 92,  
197, 712.

Erber, the conduit leading to the  
stomach; a hunting term, 1330.

\*Erd, } earth, 27, 140, 881.  
Erde, }

\*Erde, lands, 1808.

Erly, 567.

\*Ernd, } errand, 257, 559, 809.  
Ernde, }

Ermyrn, 881.

Etayn, giant, 140. A.S. *oöten*, a  
giant, monster.

Etayne, giants, 723.

Ethe, ask, 379, 2467.

Ethe, easy, 676.

Ette, ate, 113.

Euenden, evenly (?), perpendicu-  
larly (?), 1345.

Euensong, 932.

Eue, borders, *eaves*, 1178. A.S.  
*efese*, brim, bank.

Expoun (=expound), describe, ex-  
plain, 209, 1506.

Fade, hostile, 149. Isl. *fæd*=feud,  
enmity. S. Saxon, *ifæied*. O.E.  
*ivet*.

Fale, fallow (?), grassy (?), 728.

Falle, befall, happen, 483.

Falled, belonged, appertained,  
2243.

Falle, befalls, appertains, 1303,  
1358, 2327.

Faltered, 430.

\*Fange, take, receive, 391.

\*Fannand, waving, flowing, 181.

Fantoum, phantom, illusion, 240.

\*Farand, goodly, 101.

Fare, unusual display, entertain-  
ment, 537; behaviour, conduct,  
1116, 2386; course, path, way,  
694, 1703, 1793; proceeding,  
adventure, 2494; business, 409.

Faren, gone, 1231.

\*Fare, goes, journeys, 699; (*imp*.)  
go ye, 2149.

Faut, fault, 1551, 2435.

Fautles, } faultless, 640, 1761.  
Fautle, }

Fawne, to caress, 1919.

Fawty, faulty, 2382, 2386.

\*Fax, } hair, 181.  
Fax, }

- Fayly, to fail, 1067.  
 Fayle, fails, 278, 455.  
 Fayn, glad, joyful, 388, 840, 1067.  
 Fayntyse, deceit, cowardice, 2435.  
 O. Fr. *feintise*, *faintise*, from *feindre*, *faindre*.  
 Fayrye, enchantment, magic, 240.  
 "It was of *fayry*, as the people semed."  
 (Chaucer's Squyeres Tale.)  
 Faythely, certainly, 1636.  
 Feble, 354.  
 Feersly, 329.  
 Fee, 1622.  
 Felajes, fellows, 1702.  
 Felaschyp, fellowship, 652.  
 Felde, fold, embrace, 841, 890.  
 Cf. *fems*=foam.  
 \*Fele, } many, 122, 239, 428,  
 Felle, } 1566.  
 Fele-fold, manifold, 1545.  
 Fele-kyn, many kinds of, 890.  
 Feler, more, greater, 1391.  
 Felle, hill, moor, 723. O.N. *fall*.  
 Felle, befall, 1588.  
 Felle, skin, hide, 943, 1359, 1944.  
 \*Felle, fierce, bold, furious, 291,  
 847, 874. Used substantively,  
 1585.  
 Fellely, } fiercely, cruelly, boldly,  
 Felly, } 2302.  
 Felle, skins, 880, 1737.  
 Femed, foamed, 1572.  
 \*Ferde, fear, 2130, 2272.  
 Ferde, ferden = proceeded, acted,  
 149, 703, 1282, 1433. See *Fare*.  
 Ferde, feared, afraid, 1295, 1588,  
 2382.  
 Fere, undaunted; literally, whole,  
 sound, 103. Dan. *för*. O.N. *færr*.  
 \*Fere, a companion, 676, 695, 915,  
 2411; *in-fere*=together, in com-  
 pany, 267.  
 Fere, companions, 594.  
 \*Ferk, to proceed, ride, 1072, 1973.  
 Ferked, ran, 2173.  
 \*Ferke, } rides, rises, 173, 2013.  
 Ferkke, }
- \*Ferly, wonder, marvel, 716, 2414.  
 Ferly, } wondrous, wondrously,  
 Ferlyly, } 388, 741, 766, 1694,  
 2494.  
 Ferlyes, marvels, 23.  
 Fermysoun, a hunting term, ap-  
 plied to the time in which the  
 male deer were *closed*, or not  
 allowed to be killed, 1156.  
 Ferre, afar, 1093.  
 Fersly, brightly, 832.  
 Ferum, afar. See *On-ferum*.  
 Fest, secured, fastened, 2347.  
 Festned, fastened, 1783.  
 Feted, behaved, acted, 1282.  
 \*Fetled, joined, 656.  
 Fetly, featly, 1758.  
 Fette, fetched, brought, 1084.  
 Fetures, 145.  
 Feye, dead, 1067. Sc. *foy*. Icel.  
*feigr*, fated.  
 Fest, fight, 717.  
 Feptyng, fighting, 267.  
 \*Fildore, gold thread, 189.  
 Fire=fere (?)=fear, 1304.  
 Firre, } further, moreover, 378,  
 Fyrre, } 411, 1105, 2121.  
 First, early, youthful, 54.  
 Flat, ground, field, 507.  
 Fla, } flew, fled, 459, 2274,  
 Flaje, } 2276.  
 Flet, } floor (originally applied  
 Flette, } to the *hall* itself. See  
 Romance of Alexander, ed. Ste-  
 venston, l. 821), 294, 568, 832,  
 859, 1374, 1653, 1925. A.S.  
*flett*.  
 \*Flete, fletted, flew, 1566.  
 Flone, arrow, 1161. A.S. *flán*.  
 Flone, arrows, 1566.  
 Flosche, flood, pool, marsh, 1430.  
 O.Sc. *flouss*. "Plasche or *flasche*,  
 where reyne watyr stondythe,  
 torrens, lacuna." (Prompt.  
 Parv.)  
 Floten, removed, 714.  
 Flynt, 459.

- Flyȝe, fly, 524.  
 Flyȝes, flies, 166.  
 Fnast, to breathe hard, 1587. A.S.  
*fnæst*, a puff, blast.  
 Fnasted, breathed hard, 1702.  
 Foch, fetch, 396.  
 Fochcheȝ, fetches, 1961.  
 \*Fold, } earth, 23, 196, 396, 422.  
 Folde, }  
 Folden, folded, 959; plighted,  
 1783.  
 Foldeȝ (*imp.*), grant thou, 359;  
 (*pres.*) accords, 499.  
 Fole, foal, 173, 459.  
 Fole, fool, 1545.  
 Foly, foolishly, 324.  
 Folȝande=following, suitable, 145,  
 859.  
 Folȝed, followed, 1895.  
 Folȝes, follows, 1164.  
 \*Fonde, to try, endeavour, 291,  
 565, 986; might find, 1875.  
 Fondet, } attempted, proved,  
 Founded, } 1549, 2125, 2130.  
 \*Fonge, to take, receive, 816,  
 1556, 1622; (*pret.*) 646, 1315,  
 1363.  
 Fonge, } (*p.p.*) taken, 919, 1315.  
 Fonged, }  
 Fongen, took, 1265.  
 Foo=Northumbrian *fa*, bad, vile,  
 hence rugged, rough, 1430, 2326.  
 A.S. *fáh*, hostile. Sir F. Madden  
 suggests *large, largely*. In the  
*Cursor Mundi*, fol. 48, *fa* is ap-  
 plied to clothing. In the *Morte*  
*Arthure*, ed. Halliwell, p. 63,  
 we have the phrase "*faweȝtheȝ*,"  
 the rough waves.  
 "The pryce schippeȝ of the porte  
 provene theire depnesse  
 And fondeȝ wyth ful saile ower the  
*faweȝ theȝ*."  
 For, because, 258; before (?), 965,  
 1822.  
 For-be=for-by, surpassing, 652.  
 Fordeȝ, fords, 699.  
 Forfaren, destroyed, 1895.  
 \*Forferde, destroyed, killed, 1617.  
 Forlancyng, cutting off, 1334.  
 Forlondeȝ, 699.  
 \*Forme, beginning, 499; foremost,  
 2373.  
 Forne, formerly (?), 2422.  
 For-olde, became very old, 1440.  
 Forsake, to deny, 475.  
 Forsness, vigour, strength, 646.  
 Forsoke, denied, 1826.  
 \*Forst, frost, 1694.  
 \*Forth, } passage, ford, stream,  
 Forthe, } 1585, 1617, 2173.  
 Forȝ, }  
 \*For-thi, } therefore, 27, 240, 283,  
 For-thy, } 455.  
 \*Forward, } covenant, 1105, 1395,  
 Forwarde, } 1636.  
 Forwardeȝ (*pl.*), covenants, 378,  
 409, 1405.  
 For-wondred, astonished, 1660.  
 Forȝate, forgot, 1472.  
 For-ȝelde, requite, 839, 1279,  
 1535. See *ȝelde*.  
 Foteȝ, feet, 574.  
 Fotte, fetch, 451.  
 Founded, came, 267.  
 \*Foundeȝ, goes, 1585, 2229.  
 Fourcheȝ, a hunting term, applied  
 to the *forks* or *haunches* of the  
 deer, 1357.  
 "And after the ragge-boon kytteȝ  
 euyn also,  
 The *forchis* and the sydes euyn by-  
 twene,  
 And loke that your knyues ay whettyd  
 bene;  
 Thenns turne vp the *forchis*, and frote  
 theym wyth blood,  
 For to saue grece; so doo men of good."  
 (Boke of St. Alban's, 1496.)  
 Foyned, turned aside, 428.  
 \*Foyoun, plenty, 122.  
 \*Fraist, } to ask, seek, 409; (*1st*  
 Frayste, } *pers. sing.*) 279.  
 Frayst, } asked, 324, 391, 1395;  
 Fraysted, } tried, proved, 1679.

Fraytez, askest, 455; tries, 503.  
 Fraunchis, } frankness, liberality,  
 Fraunchyse, } 652, 1264.

\*Frayn, to seek, 489.

Frayned, asked, 359; 703, 1046.

\*Fre, noble, 101, 847, 1156, 1885,  
 1961. Used substantively, 1545,  
 1549, 1783.

\*Freke, man, warrior, 149, 196,  
 241, 651.

Frekes, }  
 Frekez, } men, 703, 840, 1172.

Frekez, man's, 537.

Frely, noble, 816, 894.

Fremedly, as a stranger, 714. A.S.  
*fremed*, foreign, alien, strange.

Frenges, fringes, 598.

Frenkysch, French (?), frank (?),  
 jocular (?), 1116. Does not  
*frenkysch fare* = extraordinary  
 conduct?

"In faith, Noe, I had as leif thou had  
 sleped, for all thy *frankish fare*,  
 For I will not doe after thy red."

(Chester Mysteries.)

Fres, froze, 728.

Fresche (meat), 122.

Freschly, quickly, 1294.

\*Frithe, } an enclosed wood, 1430,

Frythe, } 1973, 2151.

Frythez, woods, 695.

\*Fro, from (the time that), 8, 62;  
 from, 1336.

Frote, rub, 1919.

Frounses, wrinkles, contracts, 2306.

Frount, forehead, 959.

\*Fulsun (=fulsen), to help, aid,  
 99. A.S. *fulstan*, to help.

Funde, }  
 Funden, } found, 396, 640.

Furred, 1737.

Fust, fist, hand, 391.

Fute, } (=feut) track of a fox or  
 Fuyt, } beast of chase by the  
 odour, 1425. "*Fewte*, vesti-  
 gium." (Prompt. Parv.)

Fych, fix, 396.

Fyched, fixed, 658.

Fyked, shrank, was troubled, 2274.

Fyled, ground, 2225.

\*Fylyolez, round towers, 796.

Fylle, fulfil, 1405, 1934.

Fylor, grindstone (?), 2225.

\*Fylter, contend, join in contest,  
 986.

Fynde=fyned=ended (?), 660.

Fyne, perfect, unconditional, 1239.

Fynisment, end, finish, 499.

Fynly, wholly (?), 1391.

Fyrre, moreover, 2121.

Fyskez, runs, 1704. A.S. *fysian*,  
*fysan*, to hasten, rush.

Fyzed, were fair (?), 796. A.S. *fægr*,  
 fair. Does *fyzed* = united, ex-  
 tended, from A.S. *gefæg*, union?

\*Game, }  
 Gamen, } sport, game; 365.

Gamnes, }  
 Gamnez, } games, sports, 1319.

\*Gart, caused, 2460.

Gargulun, part of the inwards of  
 a deer, apparently included in  
 the *numbles*, 1335, 1340.

Garysoun (=warisoun), treasure,  
 reward, 1225, 1807, 1837. Fr.  
*garison*.

Garytez, watch towers, 791.

Gast=aghaast, afraid, 325.

Gate, way, road, path, 696, 778,  
 930.

Gates, roads, ways, 709.

Gaudi = gaude (?) = ornament (?),  
 167.

Gay, } an epithet used substan-  
 Gaye, } tively, and applied to  
 both sexes, 970, 1215, 1822,  
 2035.

Gayly, 598.

\*Gayn, to befit, 584.

Gayn, serviceable, 178; fit, proper,  
 1241.

Gayn, promptly, quickly, 1621.

Gaynest, nearest, speediest, 1973.

- Gaynly, fitly, promptly, 476, 1297.  
 Gederes, gathers, 421, 777.  
 Gef, gave, 370, 668, 2349.  
 Gentyle, pleasant, 1022.  
 \*Gere, armour, 569, 584.  
 Gered, arrayed, dressed, 86, 179, 957, 2227; disposed, 791; made, fashioned, 1832.  
 Gereȝ, apparel, 1470.  
 \*Gereȝ, *vb.* arrays, 1872.  
 Geserne, } axe, 288, 326, 375,  
 Giserne, } 2265. O.Fr. *gisarme*.  
 Get, booty, gain, 1638.  
 Geten, got, 1171, 1625.  
 Gif, to give, 288, 365.  
 Glade, to gladden, 989.  
 Gladloker, gladlier, 1064.  
 \*Glam, talk, conversation, clamour, 1426, 1652.  
 \*Glauerande, noisy, yelping, 1426.  
 Glaumande, noisy, riotous, 46. See *Glam*.  
 Gle, 46.  
 Glede, burning coal, ember, 1609. A.S. *gléd*.  
 Gleme, 598.  
 Glemered, glimmered, gleamed, 172.  
 \*Glent, glance, 1290.  
 \*Glent, glanced, looked, 82, 476; shone, 172, 569, 604; brightened, started up, 1652; shrank, 2290.  
 Glod=glided, came, 661.  
 Glode=clod (?), clump, hillock, tuft (?), 2266.  
 Glodes, pl. of *Glode*, 2181.  
 Glouȝ, 583.  
 \*Glyfte, looked, 2265.  
 "Sir Gawayne *glyftes* on the gome with a glade wille."  
 (Morte Arthure, p. 211.)  
 \*Glyȝt, looked, 842, 970.  
 Goande, walking, 2214.  
 Godly, }  
 Goudly, } goodly, courteously,  
 Godlych, } 273, 584, 1933.  
 Gog, a corruption of God, 390.  
 \*Gomen, game, sport, 273, 661, 1014, 1376.  
 Gomenly, playfully, 1079.  
 \*Gomnes, }  
 Gomneȝ, } games, 495, 683, 1894.  
 \*Gopnyng=glopnyng=affright.  
 \*Gorde, *p. p.* gird, 1851.  
 Gorȝ, strikes, spurs, 2062.  
 Gorȝer=gorget, wrapper or covering for the throat, 957.  
 Gost, spirit, life, 2250.  
 Gostlych, ghostly, 2461.  
 Gotȝ, goes, 375, 1293; (*imp.*) 2119.  
 Gouleȝ, } gules, 619, 663. O.Fr.  
 Gowleȝ, } *gule*.  
 Gracons=gracious=gracious, fair, beautiful, 216.  
 Grant-merci, } gramercy, thanks,  
 Graunt-mercy, } 838, 1037, 1392.  
 Grattest, greatest, 207, 1441.  
 Gray, *adj.* 82.  
 Grayes, becomes gray, 527.  
 Grayn, 211.  
 \*Grayth, } ready, prepared, prompt,  
 Graythe, } 448, 597, 2047.  
 Graythed, arrayed, dressed, prepared, 74, 109, 666, 876, 2259.  
 Graythely, readily, speedily, 417, 876, 1006, 1335; willingly, 1470; steadfastly, firmly, 2292.  
 \*Graytheȝ, makes ready, goes, 2014.  
 Grece, 425.  
 \*Grem, } anger, 312, 2370; mis-  
 Greme, } chief, 2251; displeasing, 1507.  
 Grenne=grin, make game, 464; A.S. *grennian*.  
 Gres, 1326.  
 Gres, }  
 Gresse, } grass, 235, 2181.  
 Gret, greeted, accosted, 842, 1933.  
 Grete=great (ones), 2490.  
 Grete, cry, weep, 2157. A.S. *gratan*.  
 Greue, grove, copse, 1355, 1707, 1898, 1974.



Greues, } groves, 207, 508.  
 Greue, }  
 Greue, greaves, leg-armour, 575.  
 Grome (=groom), man, knight,  
 1006.

Gronyed, grunted as a wild boar.  
 A.S. *grunan*, to grunt.

\*Gruchyng, displeasing, misliking,  
 2126.

\*Grwe=gre, will, 2251.

Gryed, trembled, was troubled,  
 agitated, 2370. A.S. *grýre*, hor-  
 ror, terror.

\*Grymme, sharp, 413; cruel, 2260.

\*Gryndel, angry, wroth, fierce,  
 2338.

Gryndel-layk, anger, fierceness,  
 312.

Gryndelly, wrathfully, 2299.

Gryndelston, grindstone, 2202.

Gryped, grasped, 421, 1335.

Gurd, gird, 588.

Gyld, gilded, 569.

\*Gyng, assembly, 224.

\*Gyrde, strikes, spurs, 2160.

Habbe, } have, hast, 327, 452,  
 Habbes, } 626, 1252.  
 Habbe, }

Hadet=halet (?)=haled (?), 681.  
 See *Haled*.

Halawed, hallowed, 1723.

\*Halce=halse, neck, 427.

Halched, embraced, 939; looped,  
 fastened, 185, 218, 657, 1852.

Halche, fastens, 1613.

Halde, to hold, 1125.

Halden, held, 124; obliged, bound,  
 1040, 1828; esteemed, 1297.

Haldes, } holds, 53, 627; journeys,  
 Halde, } 698.

\*Haled, rushed, 458; rose, 788;  
 pulled, hauled, 1338; shot, dis-  
 charged, 1455; trimmed, 157;  
 gone, 1049.

Hales, drives, rushes, 136.

Half, behalf, 2149.

Halidaye, festivals, 1049.

Halme, handle, 218, 330, 2224.

Halowyng, 1602.

\*Hals, } neck, 621, 1353, 1639.  
 Halse, }

Halt, held, 2079.

Halue, behalf, 326, 692, 2119;  
 side, 742, 1552; sides, 2070,  
 2165.

Halydam, reliques of the saints (?),  
 or the sacrament (?), 2123.

\*Halȝes, saints, 2122.

Hamloune, crosses, winds, a hunt-  
 ing term, used of the wiles of  
 the fox, 1708.

Han, (*pl.*) have, 23, 1089, 2093.

Hanselle, specimen, first occur-  
 rence, 491. O.N. *handsel*, stipu-  
 latio manufactu.

\*Hap, fortune, 48; "*hap vpon heȝe*"  
 =good fortune every where. Sir  
 F. Madden thinks that it is  
 somewhat equivalent to *hap-  
 hazard*.

Hapnest, most fortunate, 56.

\*Happe, cover, enclose, 1224.

Happed, fastened, 655; wrapped,  
 864.

Hardi, } 59, 371.  
 Hardy, }

Harled, drawn, trailed, 744. See  
*Haled*.

Harnays, 590.

Harnayst, 592.

Hasel, 744.

Haspe, chain, fastening, 1233.

\*Hasped, clasped, closed, 281, 590,  
 831.

\*Haspe, clasps, 1388.

Hastlette, part of the inwards of  
 a wild boar, 1612. In modern  
 writers it is spelt *harslets*, *haslets*.

\*Hat, } am named, 253, 381, 2445;  
 Hatte, } is called, 10.

\*Hathel, an adjective used sub-  
 stantively to denote a noble per-  
 son, knight or warrior, 221, 234,

- 256, 655, 844; applied to God, 2056; to an attendant, 2065.
- Hatheles, } nobles, men, etc., 829,  
 Hathele, } 895, 949, 1138, 1602.
- Hattes, art named, 379, 401.
- Hauberghe, } hauberk, cuirass,  
 Hawbergh, } 203, 268.
- Haunches, 2032.
- Hawtesse, nobility, power, 2454.
- Hay! exclamation or cry of the hunters, 1158, 1445.
- \*Haylce, embrace, salute, 2493.
- \*Haylsed, saluted, 223, 810, 829.
- Haylses, salutes, 972.
- \*Hazer, more noble, fitter, 352.
- Hazer=precious (?), 1738.
- Hay-thorne, hawthorn, 744.
- Hedley, headless, 438.
- \*Hef, heaved, hove, raised, 826, 1587; was elated, 120.
- Hegge, hedges, 1708.
- \*Heldande, bowing, inclining, 972, 1104.
- Helden, to ride, follow, 1692; went, rode, 1922.
- Helder, more, in a greater degree; "neuer-the-holder," 376, 430. A word still preserved in Lancashire and the North. O.N. *heldr*.
- Heldet, set, went down, 1321; moved, went back, 2331.
- Helme, 203, 268.
- Hem, them, 862.
- Heme=hemme(?)=hem(?) skirt(?), 157. Sir F. Madden suggests *close, tight*.
- Hemely, secretly, closely, 1882. Dan. *hemmelig*.
- \*Hende, fair, courteous, 108, 405, 467, 647, 896, 1104, 1731; used substantively, 827, 946, 1252, 1813, 2330.
- \*Hendelayk, courtesy, 1228.
- Hendest, fairest, 26.
- Hendly, } fairly, courteously, well,  
 Hondely, } 773, 829, 895, 1228.
- Heng, } hang, 476, 478, 732,  
 Henge, } 1345.
- Henges, hangs, 182.
- Henne, hence, 1078. A.S. *henan*.
- \*Hent, take, receive, 827; (*pret.*) took, 864, 983, 2277, 2317; (*p.p.*) 2323, 2484.
- Hentes, takes, 605.
- Her, } their, 54, 120, 428.  
 Here, }
- Herande, hearing, 450.
- Herber, lodging, 755, 812. A.S. *hereberga*.
- Herber, to lodge, 805.
- Herbered, lodged, 2481.
- \*Here, host, army, assembly, 59, 2271.
- Here, hair, 180, 436; bristles, 1587.
- \*Here, to praise, 1634.
- Hered-men, courtiers, nobles, 302. A.S. *hired*, a royal household, a court, assembly.
- Herle, twist, fillet, 190.
- Herre, higher, 333.
- Hersum, attentive, and hence devout, 932. A.S. *hýrsum*, obedient.
- Heruest, 521.
- Hest, order, bidding, 1039, 1090, 1092.
- \*Hete, to promise, 2121.
- \*Heterly, } violently, strongly,  
 Hetterly, } 1152, 1446, 1462, 1587, 2311; quickly, suddenly, 2291, 2317.
- Hetes, promises, 1525.
- \*Hethen, hence, 1794, 1879.
- \*Hette, promised, 450.
- Hette, promisedest, 448.
- Heue, } heavy, 289, 496.  
 Heuy, }
- \*Heuen, raise, 1346.
- Heuened, raised, 349.
- Heuen-ryche, heaven, 2423.
- Hewen, forged, 211.
- Hewes, colours, 1761.

Hez, } high, 48, 222, 593; noble,  
 Heze, } 812, 831; important,  
 1051; used adverbially, 1417.  
 Hezy, devoutly, 755, 773; highly,  
 greatly, 949; quickly, 983. A.S.  
*hige*, careful, diligent.  
 Hext, height, 788.  
 Hider, hither, 264.  
 Hired, hastened, 826, 1152. See  
*Hyz*.  
 Hit, it, joined to a plural noun,  
 280, 1251.  
 Hize, } noble, 120; loud, 307, 468,  
 Hyze, } 1165, 1602; tall, 1154;  
 used substantively for heights,  
 high grounds, 1152, 1169, 2004.  
 Hilych, noble, admirable, 183.  
 Hityly, fitly, 1612. A.S. *hyhtlice*,  
 gladly, diligently.  
 Ho, she, 934, 948, 1001.  
 Hod, } hood, 155, 2297.  
 Hode, }  
 Hoge, huge, 208, 743.  
 Hol, } whole, entire, 1338, 1406,  
 Hole, } 1613, 2296.  
 Holle, }  
 \*Holde, castle, mansion, 771.  
 Holde, faithfully, 2129. A.S. *held*.  
 Germ. *hold*.  
 Holdely, faithfully, carefully, 1875,  
 2016.  
 Holly, wholly, 1049, 1257.  
 Holsumly, comfortably, 1731.  
 \*Holt, } forest, 742, 1677, 1697.  
 Holte, }  
 Holtey, forests, 1320.  
 Holyn-bobbe, holly-bough, 206.  
 Hol, hollow, 2182.  
 Hom, them, 99, 819, 979, 984.  
 Homered, hammered, struck, 2311.  
 Homes, abodes, dwellings, 12.  
 Honde-selle, gift, 66. See *Hanselle*.  
 Hondele, handle, use, 289.  
 Hone, delay, 1285.  
 Hoo, stop, 2330.  
 Hope, think, trust, 140, 352, 395,  
 2301.

Hor, their, 130, 1014, 1127, 1139.  
 Hore, hoary, 743.  
 Hose, 157.  
 Hostel, dwelling, inn, 805. O.Fr.  
*hosteil*.  
 \*Houed, tarred, 785, 2168.  
 Houes, hoofs, 459.  
 Hojes, houghs, 1357. A.S. *hoh*.  
 Hult, hilt, 1594.  
 Hunt, hunter, huntsman, 1422,  
 1701.  
 Huntas, hunters, 1147, 1604, 1910.  
 Hwe, *hue*, colour, complexion, 147,  
 234.  
 Hwen, hew, cut, 1346.  
 Hwes, } hues, 707, 867, 1738.  
 Hwez, }  
 Hyghe! } a shout or exclamation  
 Hyze! } of the hunters, 1445.  
 Hy, *sb.* high, 302.  
 Hy, *vb.* hasten, 299, 2121.  
 Hy, *sb.* haste, 245.  
 Hyze, noble, etc. See *Hize*.  
 Hyzen, hasten, 1910.  
 Hyzes, } hastens, 521, 1351, 1462.  
 Hyze, }  
 \*Hyzt, promised, 1966, 2218.  
 Hyzt, height, stature, 332.  
 Iche, each, 126, 1811.  
 Ile, 7, 698.  
 Ilk, } same, 24, 1062, 1256,  
 Ilke, } 1385.  
 \*Ilyche, alike, 44.  
 Innogh,  
 Innoghe, } enough, 77, 219, 404,  
 Ino, } 514, 1401, 1948.  
 Inoze, }  
 Innowe, }  
 Inwyth, within, 1055.  
 \*Irked, were fatigued, tired, 1573.  
 \*I-wis, } truly, certainly, 252,  
 I-wyis, } 264, 1035, 1065, 1226,  
 I-wysse, } 1230, 1276, 1487.  
 \*Iapez, jokes, jests, 542, 1957.  
 Ientyle, gentle, of noble birth or  
 breeding, 542.

- Ioly, 86.  
 Iolyly, gaily, 42.  
 Ioparde, 97.  
 Ioyfnes, youth, 86.  
 Iusted, 42.  
 Iustying, 97.  
 \*Kachande, catching, reining up, 1581.  
 Kanel, collar, neck, 2298.  
 Kaulacioun, strife, 2275. See *Caulounz*.  
 Kay, left, 422. O.Dan. *kay*, *kei*.  
 \*Kayre, to journey, depart, 1048, 1670.  
 Kayred, turned, returned, 43.  
 \*Ka;t, } took, received, 643,  
 Ka;ten, } 1118  
 \*Kende=kenned, taught, 1489.  
 Kene, bold, brave, 321; active, 482.  
 Kenel, 1140.  
 Kenet, hound, 1701.  
 Kenly, quickly, 1048.  
 Kenne=bikenne=commend, 2067.  
 \*Kennes, teaches, 1484.  
 Kepe, care, heed, 546.  
 Kepe, to heed, or meet in a hostile way, 307; take heed, 372.  
 Kerchofes, kerchiefs, covering for the head, 954.  
 Kerre, rock, 1431. A.S. *carr*.  
 \*Kest, chance, blow (?), 2298; twist, knot, 2376; stratagem, 2413.  
 Kest, raised, 64; cast, 228, 1192, 1355; thought, formed a plan, 1855; set, appointed, 2242.  
 Kesten, cast, 1649.  
 \*Keuer, to arrive, accomplish, 750, 804; gain, 1221, 1254; recover, 2298.  
 Keuered, recovered, 1755.  
 Keuere;, obtains, brings, 1539; descends, 2221.  
 Knaged, nailed, riveted, 577. Sw. *nagga*, to prick.  
 Knappe, a man, 2136. A.S. *cnapa*.  
 Knarre, rock, cliff, 1434. Dan. *knort*, a *knur*, knob.  
 Knarre;,=rocks, 721, 2166.  
 Knawen, know, 133.  
 Knitten, joined, 1331.  
 Knokled, with craggy projections, rugged, 2166. Du. *knokke*, a knot in a tree. Ger. *knockel*, a *knuckle*, knot.  
 Knorned, rugged, 2166. Sw. *knorla*, to twist, curl.  
 Knot, a hunting term, borrowed from and used as the French *naud*, 1334.  
 Knot, crag, 1431, 1434.  
 Knotes, knobs, rivets, 577.  
 Knotte, 188, 194.  
 Knyt, made, 1642.  
 \*Koyntyse, cunning, 2447.  
 Kowarde, 2131.  
 \*Kyd, } known, renowned, 51,  
 Kydde, } 263, 1520; directed, 775; shewed, manifested, 2340.  
 Kyn, kind, 890.  
 Kynnes, kinds, 1886.  
 Kynde, lineage, race, 5; nature, disposition, reason, 321, 1348.  
 Kynde, suitable, 473.  
 Kyndely, suitably, 135.  
 Kyrf, cut, blow, 372. A.S. *cyrf*.  
 Kyrk, church, 2196.  
 \*Kyrtel, tunic, gown, 1831.  
 \*Kyth, } country, land, territory,  
 Kythe, } kingdom, 460, 2120.  
 \*Lach, to take, receive, accept, 234, 292, 1502, 1676.  
 Lachen (*pl.*) take, 1027, 1131.  
 Laches, } takes, receives, 595,  
 Lache;, } 936, 1029.  
 Lacheche;, }  
 Lachet, clasp, tie, 591.  
 Lad, led, 947.  
 Ladé, lady, 1810.  
 Laft (=left), granted, delivered, 369.

Lag=lagh=law=low (?), 1729.

Laght. See *Lajt*.

\*Lance, } ride forth (?), 1175; tell,  
Launce, } 2124.

Lanced, rode, 1561; uttered, threw  
out, 1766, 1212.

Lancen, fall quickly, drop off, 526.

Langaberde, Lombards, 12.

Lante, lent, gave, 2250.

\*Lappe, lappet, hem, 936.

Lapped, wrapped, folded, 217, 575.

\*Lappe, embraces, 973.

Lappe, flaps, 1350.

Larges, } liberality, 2381; large-  
Largesse, } ness, 1627.

Lasse, less, 87.

Lassen, to lessen, 1800.

\*Lathe, injury, harm, 2507.

\*Lathed, invited, 2403. Sir F.  
Madden says it is "perhaps a  
form of *lajed*, laughed."

Launced. See *Lanced*.

\*Launde, clear level space in a  
wood, plain, lawn, 765, 2146,  
2154, 2174, 2333.

Lausen, to loose, 1784.

\*Lawe, mount, hill, 765, 2171,  
2175.

Lawe, manner (?), 790.

Lawse, looses, 2376.

\*Layk, sport, game, 1023, 1125,  
1513.

Layke, to sport, play, 1111.

\*ayked, sported, played, 1554,  
1560.

Layke, *sb.* sports, 262.

Eayke, *vb.* plays, sports, 1178.

Laykyng, sport, playing, 472.

\*Layne, to conceal, keep secret,  
1863, 2124, 2128; (*imp.*) 1786.

Layt, lightning, 199.

\*Layt, to look, seek, 411, 449.

Laytes, seeks, 355.

Lajande, laughing, 988, 1068, 1212.

Laje, } laugh, 472, 464, 2514.  
Lajen, }

\*ajed, laughed, 69, 909, 1079.

Lajes, } laughs, 316, 1479.  
Laje, }

Lajt, took, caught, received, 328,  
433, 667, 1830, 2449; taken,  
received, 156, 971, 2507; caught,  
433.

Lajter, laugh, laughter, 1217.

Lajyng, laughing, 1954.

Le, } *lea*, land, plain, 849, 1893.  
Lee, }

Ledande, leading, 1894.

\*Lede, man, person, 98, 540, 1063,  
1195, 2095; people, folk, 258;  
land, territory, 833, 1113.

Lede, men, 38, 126, 679, 1231.

\*Lef, dear, agreeable, 909, 1111,  
1924.

Legge, liege, 346.

Leke, fastened, encircled, 1830.  
O.Sw. *lycka*.

Lel, } loyal, faithful, 35, 1513,  
Lele, } 1516.

Lelely, loyally, faithfully, 449,  
1863, 2124.

\*Lemand, } gleaming, shining,  
Lemande, } 485, 1119.

Lemed, shone, gleamed, 591, 1137,  
2010.

Lemman, mistress, 1781. A. S.  
*loof-man*.

\*Lende, to dwell, tarry, continue,  
1100, 1499.

\*Leng, } to dwell, tarry, remain,  
Lenge, } 411, 254, 1068.

Lenge, long, 88.

Lenged, dwelt, tarried, 1194, 1299,  
1683.

Lenges, } dwells, tarries, 536, 693.  
Lenge, }

\*Lent, remained, sate, was sta-  
tioned, 1002, 2440; occupied,  
1319. See *Lende*.

Lenthe, length, 1231.

Lentoun, Lent, 502.

\*Lere, countenance, 318, 418.

\*Lere, loss, 1109; "*lere other better*"  
="loss or gain." Sir F. Madden

- suggests "to teach" as the rendering of *lere*.
- \*Lese, to lose, 2142.
- Lested, lasted, 805.
- Let, caused, 1084; "*let not*;" was not able, 1733.
- Lete, to look, 1206; appeared, 1281; feigned, acted, 1190, 1201, 2257. A.S. *lætan*, to pretend.
- \*Lethe, to depress, moderate, 2438.
- Lether, skin, 1360.
- Lette, hindrance, 2142.
- Lette, to stop, tarry, 2603.
- Letted, hindered, 1672.
- Lette; (be), leave off, 1840.
- Lettrure, science, 1513.
- \*Leude, } man, knight, 133, 232,  
Lude, } 449, 675, 851, 908,  
1109; territory, land, 1124.
- Leudes, man's, 2449.
- Leude; men, 849, 1023, 1413.  
See *Lede*.
- Leudle; companionless, 693.
- Leue, live, 1035.
- Leue, believe, 2421, 1784, 2128.
- \*Leue, dear, beloved, 1133, 2054.
- Leuer, rather, liefer, 1251; dearer, 1782.
- Leuest, dearest, most precious, 49, 1802.
- \*Lewd, } ignorant, unlearned,  
Lewed, } 1528.
- Lewte, loyalty, faith, 2366, 2381.
- Le; lay, 2006.
- Lejten, took, 1410. See *Lajt*.
- Liffod, living, livelihood, 133.
- Lizte; } alights, 1906, 2176.  
Lyzte; }
- Like, please, 87.
- List, pleasure (?), 1719.
- \*Litherne; fierceness, 1627.
- \*Lode, guidance, 969; conduct, behaviour, 1284.
- Lodly=loudly (?), 1634.
- \*Lodly, uncourtously, 1772.
- Lofden (*pret. pl.*), loved, 21.
- Loft, }  
Lofte, } chamber, 1096, 1676.
- Loke, preserve, 2239.
- Loken, secured, fastened, enclosed, 35, 765, 2487.
- Lokke; looks, 419.
- \*Lome, tool, axe, 2309.
- Longed, belonged, appertained, 1524, 2515.
- Longe; belongs, 2381.
- Longynge, regret, trouble, 540.
- Lopen, leapt, 1413.
- Lore, learning, skill, 665.
- Lortschyp, lordship, 849.
- Los, } renown, famed, 258, 1528.
- Lose, } Fr. *los*.
- \*Lote, sound, word, and hence noise, mirth, jest, 119, 1623, 1917, 2211.
- \*Lote, feature, aspect, gesture, 639.
- \*Lote; words, 988, 1086, 1116, 1399, 1954. Sir F. Madden thinks that *lote* is connected with French *losterie*, badinage.
- Lothe, unwillingness, 127; loath, unwilling, 1578.
- Louked, fastened, looped, 217.
- Loukes, }  
Lowke; } locks, 628, 2007.
- Loupe, loop-hole in a castle, 792.
- \*Lout, } to bow down, bend to,  
Loute, } 248.
- Loutes, } descends, 833, 933;  
Loute; } stoops, bends, 1306, 1504.
- Loune, for *louis* (?), or loune (= *lovne*, praise, 1251).
- Louelych, lovingly, 1410.
- Louelok, lovelier; used substantively=the fairer one, 973.
- Louelokest, 52.
- Louied, loved, 87, 702.
- Louy, love, 1795.
- Louyes, }  
Louies, } loves, 2099, 2468.
- \*Lowande, shining, 236; conspicuous, 679, 868. Cf. O.E. *low*, a flame, light.

- Lowe, quiet, secret, 1399.  
 Loj, } low, 302, 1040, 1170.  
 Loje, }  
 Loje, laughed, 2389.  
 Lojly, lowly, humbly, 851, 1960.  
 Lude. See *Lede* and *Leude*.  
 Luf, love, pleasure, 1086, 1284, 1524.  
 Luf-lajyng = luf-laughing = amorous play, 1777.  
 Luffy, } *adj.* lovely, fair, comely,  
 Luffy, } agreeable, amiable, 38,  
 575, 792, 868, 981, 1469, 1480,  
 1657, 1757; *adv.* courteously,  
 lovingly, becomingly, 254, 595,  
 1206, 1306, 1583.  
 Luffyly, courteously, lovingly, 369.  
 2176, 2514.  
 Lufsome, } lovely, 1814.  
 Lufsum, }  
 Luf-talkyng, 927.  
 Lur, loss, misfortune, 355, 1284, 1682.  
 Lurkkes, 1180.  
 \*Lut, } *pret.* of *loute*, stooped, bowed  
 Lutte, } down, 418, 2236, 2255.  
 \*Lyfte, sky, heaven, 1256.  
 Lyfte, left, 698, 947.  
 \*Lyge, lies, 1179.  
 \*Lyk, } please, 390; pleased, 1281.  
 Lyke, }  
 Lykker-wys, more pleasing, delightful, 968.  
 \*Lymp, to happen, befall, 1109.  
 Lympe, befall, 907.  
 Lyn, } *adj.* linen, 608.  
 Lyne, }  
 Lynde, wood, tree, 256, 2176.  
 Lynde-wodes, 1178.  
 Lyndes (= *lendes*), loins, 139. A.S. *lendenu*, loins.  
 Lyne, linen; whence for female apparel in general, 1814.  
 Lyre, complexion, countenance, 943, 2228; skin, 2080.  
 Lyst, desired, willed, 941, 1784, 2049.  
 Lyste, pleases, 2133.  
 Lystily, } quickly, promptly,  
 Lystyly, } 1190, 1334.  
 \*Lyte, few, 701, 1776.  
 \*Lythen, to listen, 1719.  
 Lyte, to lie, recline, 1096, 1994.  
 Lyjt, alighted, 1924.  
 Lyzt, light, not heavy, 608.  
 Lyzt, to descend, alight, fall, 423, 1175, 1373, 2220.  
 Lyzte, alights. See *Lizte*.  
 Lyzten (*pl.*), alight, 526.  
 Lyztly, easily, 423, 1299.  
 Mach = match, to encounter, meet in combat, 282.  
 \*Mace = mas = makes, 1885.  
 \*Madde, rage with love, 2414.  
 Ma fay! ma foi! 1495.  
 Mas, } makes, 106.  
 Mase, }  
 Males, } bags, trunks, 1129, 1809.  
 Male, }  
 Malt, dissolved, melted, 2080.  
 Maner, 90.  
 Manere, 924.  
 Manerly, 1656.  
 Mansed = manased, menaced, 2345.  
 \*Marre, to destroy, 2262.  
 \*Mat, } overcome, discouraged,  
 Mate, } wearied, 336, 1568.  
 Matyne, } morning prayers, 756,  
 Matynnes, } 2188.  
 \*Maw-gref, in spite of, 1565.  
 \*May, maiden, 1795.  
 \*Mayn, great, powerful, strong, 94, 187, 336, 497.  
 Mayntaines, maintains, 2053.  
 Maytyly, mightily, forcibly, 2262, 2290.  
 Me, used in apposition with the subject of the sentence = myself, thyself, etc., 1214, 1905, 1932, 2014, 2144.  
 \*Mele, to speak, talk, 2295, 2503.  
 Meled, spoke, talked, 447, 1280, 2373.

- Mele, speak, 543, 974, 2336.  
 Melle, } conflict, battle, 342, 644,  
 Melly, } 1451.  
 \*Mene, to signify, 232; devise,  
 985; make attempt on(?), 1157.  
 \*Menged, mixed, 1720.  
 \*Mensk, } honour, worship, 834,  
 Menske, } 914, 2052; worship-  
 ful, 964.  
 Mensked, honourably decked, 153.  
 Menskes, honours, 2410.  
 Menskful, honourable, 555, 1628,  
 1809.  
 Menskly, honourably, 1312, 1983.  
 \*Meny, } retinue, household, com-  
 Meyny, } pany, 101, 1372, 1625,  
 1729, 2468.  
 Menyng, knowledge, remembrance,  
 924.  
 Mere, simple, pure, good, 153,  
 878, 924, 1495.  
 \*Mere, } =meer, boundary, and  
 Merk, } hence appointed place  
 of meeting, 1061, 1073.  
 Merkke, aims at, 1592.  
 Mes, mess, meal, 999.  
 Messes, 999.  
 Messe-quyle, the time of celebra-  
 ting mass, 1097.  
 Metely, measurely, fitly, 1004,  
 1414.  
 \*Methles, uncourteous, without  
 pity, 2106.  
 Meued, moved, 90.  
 Mezel-mas, Michaelmas, 532.  
 Miche, much, 569.  
 Misy, quagmire, 749. Still used  
 in the North.  
 Mo, more, 23, 730, 770.  
 Mode, mind, 1475.  
 Molaynes, round embossed orna-  
 ments(?), 169.  
 \*Molde, earth, ground, 137, 914,  
 964.  
 Mon, used as the Germ. *man*, and  
 Fr. *on*, for one, a person, 1209,  
 1484.  
 Mon, must, 1811. O.N. *mun*.  
 More, greater, bigger, 649, 2100.  
 Moroun, morrow, 1208.  
 Morsel, 1690.  
 Mot, may, 342, 387, 2053; must,  
 1965, 2510.  
 Mote=moot, assemblage, meeting,  
 635, 910. A.S. *mót*.  
 \*Mote, castle, 764, 2052.  
 Mote, atom, 2009.  
 Mote, } notes or measures of a  
 Mote, } bugle, 1141, 1364.  
 Mounture, saddle horse, 1691.  
 Mournyng, 543.  
 Mojt, } might, 84, 1871, 1953.  
 Mojten, }  
 Much, great, loud, 182, 2336.  
 Much-quat = much-what, many  
 matters, 1280.  
 Muckel, greatness (of stature, size),  
 142.  
 Mugged, was cloudy, 142. O.N.  
*mugga*, der nubilus. Sir F.  
 Madden renders it *stirred*,  
 hovered.  
 Mulne, mill, 2203. A.S. *myln*.  
 \*Munt, blow, 2350. See *Mgnt*.  
 Munt, feigned, 2262.  
 Murly, merrily, pleasantly, play-  
 fully, 2336, 2345.  
 Mused, stood in doubt, 2424.  
 "Mowsyn or priuely stodyyn  
 (stondyn a dowl, K. stodyn a  
 dowe, H. *musen* or stodien a  
 doughte, P.) Muso, Musso."  
 (Prompt. Parv.)  
 Mute, pack of hounds, 1451, 1720.  
 Mute=meet, meeting of hunters,  
 1915. A.S. *mút*.  
 Muthe=mouthe, 447, 1428.  
 Mwe, to move, 1565.  
 Myd-morn, 1073.  
 Mynged, remarked, announced,  
 1422. A.S. *myngian*, to inform,  
 mark. Sir F. Madden suggests  
*assembled* as the meaning of  
*mynged*.



Myne, calls to remembrance, 995.  
 \*Mynne, to think, remember, devise, 141, 1681, 1800, 1992, 1769.

Mynne, less, 1881. O.N. *minni*.

Mynned, devised, 982.

Mynstralcie, 484.

\*Mynt, aim, blow, 3345.

Myntes (*pl.*), blows, 2352.

Myntest, didst aim or strike, 2274.

\*Mynte, aims, strikes, 2290.

Myre, 749.

Mys-boden, offered wrong, 2339.

Mysses, faults, 2391.

Myst-hakel, cloak of mist, 2081.

A.S. *hacelle*, a cloak, mantle.

Mytes, powers, 282.

Nade, had not, 724, 763.

Naf, have not, 1066.

\*Nakerys=nakers, drums, 1016.

\*Nakryn (*gen. pl.*), of drums, 118.

Nar, are not, 2092.

Naunt, *thy naunt*, thine aunt, 2467.

Nauther, } neither, 203, 430, 1095.

Nawther, }

Nay, denied, refused, 1836.

Nayle, 603.

Naylet, nailed, 599.

Nayted, celebrated, 65. O.E. *nayte*, to use, employ, enjoy. O.N. *neyta*. Left unexplained by Sir F. Madden.

Najt, night, 1407.

Nede, } of necessity, necessarily,  
 Nedes, } 1287, 1771, 1965, 2510.

Nede, } 1287, 1771, 1965, 2510.

\*Negh, } to approach, 1054; to

Neghe, } touch, 1836. See *Neze*.

Neked, little or nothing, 1062, 1805.

\*Neme, take, 1347.

Nerre, nearer, 237, 556, 1306.

\*Neuen, to name, speak of, 58.

Neuened, named, mentioned, 65, 541.

Neuenes, names, 10.

Ne, }

Ne, } nigh, 929, 1771, 1922.

Nie, }

\*Neje, to approach, 1575.

Nejed, approached, 132, 697, 929.

Nejes, approaches, 1998.

Nif, unless, 1769.

Nikked naye, denied strongly, 706, 2471.

Nirt, cut, hurt, 2498.

Nobelay, nobleness, 91.

\*No-bot, except, 2182.

Noghe=nyghe=nigh, 697.

Noke, corner, nook, 660.

Nolde, would not, 1054, 1825.

Nome, name, 10, 408, 937.

Nome, took, 809, 1407.

Nomen, taken, 91.

None, nonce, 844.

\*Norne, } to proffer, 1661, 1669,

Nurne, } 1823; allege, 2443.

\*Note, occasion, business, use, 358, 599.

Note, throat-knot(?), (Fr. *nœud*)

420. But perhaps "*to the note*"

=to the axe, *note* being of the

same origin as the preceding

word=a *tool*, *weapon*.

Note, noted (?), 2092.

Noumbles, parts of the inward of the deer, 1347.

\*Nouthe, } now, 1251, 1934, 2466;

Nowthe, } not (?), 1784.

Nowther, neither, 659.

Nowel, Noel, Christmas, 68.

Nozt, nought, 680, 694, 961.

Nurne. See *Norne*.

Nurned, proffered, 1771.

Nurture, 919, 1661.

Nwe, new, anew, 60, 636, 1668.

Nwez, news, tidings, 1407.

Nw-zer, } New-year, 60, 105,

Nwe-zer, } 284.

Nw-zeres, } New-year's, 454,

Nwe-zeres, } 1054, 1669.

\*Nye, } difficulty, trouble, harm,

Nyze, } 58, 2002, 2141.

Nye, to harm, assault, 1575.  
 Nykked with nay, denied, 706.  
 \*Nyme, to take, 993, 2141.  
 Nys, nice, strange, 323, 358.  
 Nysen (*pres. pl.*), become foolish, 1266.  
 O, of, 815.  
 Of, from, 183, 519, 1413; off, 773, 1332, 1607.  
 Of-kest, cast off, 1147.  
 Oghe, ought, 1526.  
 Olde, 1440. See *For-olde*.  
 On, one, 30, 206, 864, 952; in, 867, 969.  
 On-chasyng=a-chasing, a-hunting, 1143.  
 On-coolde, sorrowfully, 2474.  
 \*On-dryȝe=on-dreȝe=adreȝ, aside, 1031.  
 One, alone, unaccompanied, 2118; *hym one*, 904; *ours one*, 1230, 2245.  
 Onewe, anew, 65.  
 Oneȝ, once, 1090.  
 On-ferum, afar, 1575.  
 On fyrst, at first, 301, 491, 1477.  
 On-huntyng, a hunting, 1102.  
 On-hyt, on high, aloft, above, 421.  
 On-lenthe, afar, 232, 1231.  
 On-life, } alive, in life, 385, 1717,  
 On-lyue, } 1786.  
 On-lofte, aloft, above, 788, 2261.  
 On-loghe, below, down, 1373.  
 On-nyȝtes, at night, in the night, 47, 693.  
 On (vp)-slepe, asleep, 244.  
 On-stray, astray, aside, 1716.  
 Onsware, to answer, 275.  
 Onswareȝ, answers, 386.  
 Or, than, 1543.  
 Oritore, oratory, 2190.  
 \*Orpedly, boldly, 2232.  
 Oryȝt, aright, 40.  
 Ostel, mansion, 253. See *Hostel*.  
 Other, or, 9, 702, 1246; either, 2216.

Other-whyle, other times, 722.  
 Oute, throughout, wholly, 1511.  
 Outrage, surprising, 29.  
 Oueral, everywhere, 630.  
 Ouer-thwert, athwart, across, 1438.  
 Ouer-walt, overcome, overturned, 314. See *Walt*.  
 Ouer-jede, passed over, 500.  
 Oȝt, ought, 300, 1815.  
 \*Oȝt=aȝt, bold, 2215.  
 Pane, cloth, 154. O.Fr. *pane*.  
 Paneȝ (*pl.*), 855.  
 \*Papiayeȝ, parrots, 611.  
 Papure, paper, 802.  
 Paraunter, peradventure, 2343.  
 Pared, cut, 802.  
 Park, 769.  
 Passande, passing, 1014.  
 Patrounes, sovereigns, 6.  
 Paumeȝ, antlers, 1155.  
 Paunce, coat of mail, 2017.  
 \*Payeȝ, pleases, 1379.  
 Payne, to be at pains, endeavour, 1042.  
 \*Payre, to injure, impair, 1734.  
 Payred, failed, 650, 1456.  
 Payttrure, defence for the neck of a horse, 168, 601.  
 Pelure, costly fur, 154.  
 Pelures (*pl.*), furs, 2029.  
 Pendauntes, } the dropping orna-  
 Pendaunteȝ, } ments of horse-  
 trappings or a girdle, 168, 2038, 2431.  
 Penyes, pence, money, 79.  
 Pentangel, } figure of five points,  
 Pentaungel, } 620, 636, 664.  
 Pented, pertained, 204.  
 Pernyng, picking and dressing, a term applied to birds, 611.  
 \*Pertly, openly, promptly, 544, 1941.  
 Pes, peace, 266.  
 Pese=pays, measure, weight, 2364.  
 See Gloss. to Hampole.  
 Peter! an oath used as Mary! 813.

- Picked, } fastened, 576; situated,  
 Pyched, } fixed, 768.  
 \*Piked, } ornamented, cleaned,  
 Pyked, } burnished, 769, 2017.  
 Pyned, enclosed, fortified (?), 769.  
 (Perhaps a mistake for *pynacled*.  
 Sir F. Madden).  
 Pyping, 1017.  
 \*Pine, } trouble, grief, pain, tor-  
 Pyne, } ment, 123, 747, 1812,  
 1985.  
 Piped, 747.  
 Pitosly, 747.  
 Pijt. See *Pyjt*.  
 Plate, 583.  
 Plate, steel armour for the body,  
 2017.  
 Plesaunce, pleasure, 1247.  
 Plesaunt, 808.  
 Plytes, straits, 733.  
 Plyjt, harm, danger, 266; offence,  
 fault, 2393.  
 Polaynes, knee-pieces in a suit of  
 armour, 576. This term for  
*genouillieres* is found in the  
 household book of Edward the  
 First.  
 Policed, } polished, 576, 2038;  
 Polysed, } made clean, absolved,  
 Polyst, } 2393.  
 Porter, 808.  
 Pondred, 800.  
 Pouer, poor, 768.  
 Poynt, condition, 2049; to declare,  
 write, 1009..  
 Praunce, 2064.  
 Prayer, meadow, 768. Fr. *prairie*.  
 Prayse, estimate, appraise, 1850.  
 Prece, proceed, 2097.  
 Presed, thronged, 830.  
 \*Prestly, promptly, 757, 911..  
 Preué, privy, secret, 902.  
 Preue, to prove, 262.  
 Preued, proved, 79.  
 Prik, to gallop, 2049.  
 Pryme, *prime*, six o'clock in the  
 morning, 1175.  
 Pris, } price, worth, estimation,  
 Prys, } excellence, 1247, 1277,  
 1770, 1850, 2364; reward, prize,  
 1379, 1630.  
 Prise, fine, good, 1945.  
 Prowes, prowess, valour, courage,  
 912, 1249.  
 Prys, note of the horn in hunting  
 after breaking up the game,  
 1362, 1601..  
 Pure, quite, perfect, 808, 1247.  
 Pured, refined, pure, 633, 912,  
 1737, 2393.  
 Pured, furred, 154.  
 Pynakle, 800.  
 Pyne, to take pains, 1538.  
 Pyned, 1009.  
 Pysan, gorget of mail or plate at-  
 tached to the helmet, 204.  
 Pyth, strength, power, 1456.  
 Pyjt, pitched, fixed, 1456, 1734.  
 Quat, what, 233, 460.  
 Quat, how! lo! 563, 2201.  
 Quat-so, whatsoever, 255.  
 Quaynt, 999.  
 Quel, while, 822.  
 Queldepoyntes, hassocks (?), 877.  
 \*Quelle, to put an end to, 752;  
 kill, 1449, 2109,  
 Quelled, slain, 1324.  
 \*Queme, good, pleasant, 578, 2109.  
 Quen, } when, 20, 130, 497.  
 Quhen, }  
 Quere, where, 1058.  
 Quer-fore, wherefore, 1294.  
 Quere-so, wheresoever, 644, 1227,  
 1490.  
 Querré, quarry. 1324. Fr. *curée*.  
*To make the quarry*=to break  
 up the deer, and feed the hounds  
 on the skin  
 Quest, united cry of the hounds,  
 1150, 1421.  
 Quethe, cry, clamour, 1150. A.S.  
*cwéthan*, to call; *cwithe*, a saying.  
 Quethen=whethen=whence, 461.

Quether, whether, 1109.

Quettyng = whetting, 2220.

Quile, } while, 30, 257, 722,  
Quyle, } 1035; until, 536; some-  
times, at times, 1730; during,  
1096.

Quit, 293.

Quit, }  
Quite, } white, 799, 885, 1205,  
Quyt, } 2364.  
Quyte, }

Quo, who, 231.

Quo-so, whoso, 209, 306.

Quoyntaunce, acquaintance, fa-  
miliarity, 975.

Quy, who, 623.

Quyke, alive, 2109.

Quyl, } See *Quile*.  
Quyle, }

Quyle forth, during some, 1072.

Quyte, to requite, repay, 2244,  
2324.

Rabel, rabbel, pack, 1899.

\*Race (on-race), swift course, pace,  
1420.

Race, cut, blow, 2076.

Rach, hound, 1903. A.S. *ræcce*,  
*ræcc*, a setting dog.

Rachchez, } hounds, 1164, 1362,  
Rachez, } 1420, 1426, 1907.

\*Rad, afraid, 251.

Rad, ready, quick, 862. A.S. *rád*.

\*Radly, promptly, readily, 367,  
1164, 1343, 1744.

Raged, ragged, 745.

\*Rak, vapour, fox, 1695.

Rake, course, way, road, path,  
2144, 2160. Cf. Sc. *sheep-raike*.  
See *Rayke*.

"Out of the *rake* of rihtwysnes renne  
suld he nevire."

(K. Alex., p. 115.)

———— "lene to the left handes  
For the *rake* on the right hand, that  
may na mann passe."

(*Ibid.*, p. 130.)

\*Rande, a path, 1710. Sir F.  
Madden reads *raude*.

\*Rapley, quickly, 2219.

\*Rapes, moves quickly, runs, 1309,  
1903. O.Sw. *rapp*, *velox*, *citus*.

Rasez, rushes, 1461. A.S. *ræsan*.  
See *Race*.

\*Rasse, raised mound, eminence,  
1570.

Ratheled, fixed, rooted, 2294.

\*Rawez, rows, 513.

\*Rawthe, terrible, dreadful, 2204.

\*R[a]ykande, loud, strong, literally  
*rushing*, from *rayke*, to rush, flow,  
2337.

\*Rayked, went, moved, ran, 1727,  
1735.

Raykez, proceed, 1076.

Rayled, spread, 952; bordered, 163,  
603, 745. *Rayle* in O.E. sig-  
nifies to cover, clothe, deck, and  
may be connected with *rail*, a  
garment. A.S. *hragl*. See *Boks*  
of the *Howlat*, lii. (ed. Laing.)

Raynez, reins, 447.

Rayseun, reason, argument, 227;  
*by-resoun* = by right, rightly,  
reasonably, 1344.

\*Raizt, rushed, 432; reached, gave,  
1817, 1874, 2297.

Raizez, gavest, 2351.

Rech, } reach, give, 66, 1804,  
Reche, } 2059; attain, 1243.

\*Reches, } extends, 183; reachest,  
Rechez, } givest, 2324.

Rechatand = reheating, blowing  
the recheat, 1911.

Recheated, blew the recheat, blown  
on with the *recheat*, 1466.

\*Rechles, careless, 40.

Recorded, 1123.

Recreaunt, 456.

\*Red = rede, advise, counsel, 738.

Redde, counselled, said, 443.

\*Rede, maintain (?), 1970; counsel,  
363, 2111.

Redez, manageth, 373.

Redly, } readily, 373, 392.  
 Redily, }

Refourme, renew, remake, 378.

\*Rehayted, cheered, encouraged,  
 895, 1422, 1744.

Reherce, 1243.

Rehersed, 392.

\*Rekenly, nobly, worthily, princely,  
 39, 251, 821.

\*Rele, to encounter, 2246.

\*Reled, swaggered, 229; rolled,  
 spread, 304.

Remene, to remember, 2483.

Remorde, to blame, 2434.

\*Remwe, to remove, change, 1475.

\*Renay, refuse, 1827.

\*Renayed, refused, 1821.

\*Renk, } man, knight, 303, 691,

Renke, } 1558, 1821.

Renkkes, } men, 432, 862, 1134,

Renkkez, } 2246.

Rennande, running, 857.

\*Renne, to run, 1568.

Rennes, } runs, 310, 731, 1570.

Rennez, }

Repayre, 1016.

Require, 1056.

\*Res, swift course, pace, 1164,  
 1899.

Resayt, a hunting term applied to  
 the stations taken up by those  
 on foot, 1168.

Rescowe, rescue, 2308.

\*Resette, place of reception, abode,  
 2164.

Respite, 297.

Restayed, stopt, driven back, 1153.

Resteyed, constrained, 1672.

Reue, to take away, bereave, 2459.

Reuel, 311, 538.

Reuerence, 251, 1243.

Reward, 1610.

Richchande, running, 1898.

Richen, dress, 1130.

\*Ricchis, } goes, 8; prepares,  
 Riches, } dresses, 1309, 1873.  
 Ryches, }

Riche, } noble, proud, powerful,  
 Ryches, } 8, 20, 39, 40, 397,

1744. Used substantively in the  
 plural, *nobles*, 66, 362.

Riche, *sb.* horse (?), 2177.

Richley, } proudly, nobly, 308,

Rychely, } 931.

Rimed, spoke loudly, 308. A.S.  
*hreman*.

Roche, rock, 2199.

Rocher, rock 1432.

Rocheres, } rocks, 1327, 1698.

Rochere, }

Rode, rood, 1949.

Rof, blow, cut, 2346; evidently  
 from O.E. *rife*, to tear, cut.

Rogh, } rough, shaggy, 745, 1432,

Roghe, }

Roz, } 1608, 1898, 2162, 2198.

Roze, }

Rokked, rolled, knocked off,  
 cleansed, 2018.

"Geoffrey of Vinesauf says, '*Rotantur*  
*loricæ, ne rubigine squalescunt*,' which,  
 Sir S. Meyrick adds, was done by put-  
 ting the coat of mail into a barrel  
 filled with sand and rolling it about."  
 (Urit. Inq., l. 85.)

Rome;=roams, walks, proceeds,  
 2198.

Rone; thickets, brushwood, 1466.

"Thane thay roode by that ryuer, that  
 rynnnyd so swythe,

Thare the ryndeze overrechez with  
 realle bowghez;

The roo and the rayne-dere reklesse  
 thare rovene

In ranex and in rosers to ryotte thame-  
 selvene."

(Morte Arthure, p. 78.)

Ronge (*pret. of ringe*), resounded,  
 clattered, 2204.

"Hys armour *ryngis* or *clattirs* hor-  
 ribly."

(G. Douglas, vol. ii., p. 576.)

Ronk, beautiful, 513.

Ronkkled, wrinkled, 953.

Rote, in phrase *bi-rote*=cheerfully,  
 confidently, 2207. A.S. *rōt*,

- cheerful. Cf. *root-fast*, firm, steadfast (A.S. *rót-fast*). This term is left unexplained by Sir F. Madden.
- \*Roun, to whisper, commune, 362, Rounce, steed, 303. O.E. *runci*. Fr. *roncin*.
- \*Rous, =rose, praise, fame, 310. Roust, rust, 2018.
- Route, violent movement, impetus, 457.
- Rone, cleaved, cut, 2346; *pret.* of *rive*.
- Roue, roofs, 799.
- Rou, } rough. See *Rogh*.  
Roje, }
- \*Ruchched, } ordered, fixed, set-  
Ruched, } tled, 303, 367, 2219.  
See *Riches*.
- \*Rudede, streaked with red, ruddy, 1695. Cf. O.E. *rode* and *ruddon*.
- Rudele, curtains, canopies, 857.
- Ruful, 2076.
- Rugh, } rough, 953, 2166. See  
Ruje, } *Rogh*.
- \*Runisch, violent, impetuous, 457.
- \*Runischly, fiercely, roughly, 304.
- Runyschly, violently, 432.
- \*Rurd, } noise, clamour, 1149,  
Rurde, } 1698, 1916.
- \*Ruthes, moves, dresses, 1558.
- Ryalme, realm, 310, 691.
- \*Rych, direct, 1223. See *Riches*.
- Ryches, goes, prepares. See *Riches*.
- Ryched, enriched, 599; prepared, 2206.
- Ryd, } =rid, to release, 364;  
Rydde, } separate, 2246. A.S.  
*riddan*.
- Ryde, proceed, 1344.
- Rygge, back, 1344, 1608.
- Ryme, skirts, 1343. A.S. *reama*. O.E. *reme*, membrane, rim. See *Rym* in Glossary to Hampole.
- \*Rynge, =rynke, =renke, =men, 2018.
- Rynk, ring, 1817, 1827.
- Ryol, royal, 2036.
- Rype, become ripe, 528.
- Rys, bough, twig, 1698. A.S. *hris*.
- \*Rytte=ryte, cut, rip, 1332. Fris. *ryte*.
- \*Ryue=ryfe=rife, much, 2046.
- Ryue, rips, rives, cuts, 1341, 2290.
- Ryzt, addressed, prepared, 308.
- Sabatoun, steel shoes, 574. Fr. *sabot*. Spanish *sapato*.
- Sadel, sb. 437; vb. 1128.
- Sadly, gravely, steadily, 437, 1593, 1937, 2409.
- Saf, save, except, 394.
- Sage=segge=man, 531.
- \*Sale, hall, 197, 243, 349.
- Salue, to salute, 1473.
- Salure, salt-cellar, 886.
- \*Same, } together, 50, 363, 673,  
Samen, } 744, 1318.
- \*Samen, to assemble, 1372.
- Samned, joined, 659.
- Sauer, safer, 1202.
- Saverly, savourly, carefully, 1937, 2048.
- Saw, } saying, speech, 1202, 1246.
- Saje, } saying, speech, 1202, 1246.
- Saje, words, 341.
- Saylande, flowing, 865.
- Sayn, girdle, 589.
- \*Sayned, blessed, 761, 1202.
- Saynt, rich stuff, Fr. *samit*, 2431.
- Scade=schade, divided, severed, 425.
- \*Scathe, harm, 674, 2353.
- Schadden, shed, dropt, 727.
- Schafte, spear, 205.
- Schafted, set, sank, 1467.
- Schale, shall, 1240.
- \*Schalk, man, knight, 160, 424, 562, 1776, 2061, 2372.
- Schalke, men, knights, 1454.
- Scham, 317.
- Schamed, 1180.
- Schankes, legs, 160.
- Schap, was formed, shapen, 2328.

- Schape, direct (?), 1210. Sir F. Madden suggests *escape*.  
 Schapen, shaped, 213.  
 Schapes, relates, 1626.  
 Scharp, used substantively for sword, 1593, 1902; axe, 2318.  
 Schaterande, dashing, 2083.  
 Schawe, to show, 27.  
 \*Schaze, grove, wood, 2161.  
 Scheder=schedes(?), drifts(?), 956.  
 Schede3, pours, 506.  
 Schelde3, shields of a boar, 1456, 1626.  
 \*Schemered=shimered, glittered, 772.  
 \*Schend, } to destroy, confound,  
 Schende, } 2266.  
 \*Schene, bright, beautiful, 662, 2314; used substantively, 2268.  
 Schere=chere, countenance, mien, 334.  
 Scher, cut, 1337.  
 Schere, to cut, shear, 213.  
 Scho, she, 1259, 1550, 1555.  
 Scholes, hangs down (?), 160.  
 Schonkes, } legs, 431, 846.  
 Schonke3, }  
 Schore, shore, earth, 2161, 2332.  
 Schore3 (pl.), 2083.  
 Schotten, shot, 1167.  
 Schowued, shoved, fell with force, 2083.  
 Schowen (pl. pres.), shove, push, 1454.  
 Schowue3, shoves, pushes, 2161.  
 Schrank, sunk, pierced, 425, 2313.  
 Schrof, shrived, 1880.  
 Schunt, a shunt, flinching, 2268.  
 Schunt, shunted, finched, shrunk, 1902, 2280.  
 Schwne=shun, protect, defend, 205.  
 Schylde, forbid, 1776.  
 \*Schyn, shall, 2401.  
 \*Schyr, } fair, bright, clear, 317,  
 Schyre, } 425, 619, 772; used  
 Schyre, } substantively for *skin*,  
 neck, 2256.  
 Schyre, fairly, clearly, 506, 2083.  
 Schyrer, fairer, clearer, 955.  
 Schyrly, cleanly, 1880.  
 Scowtes, high rocks (?), 2167.  
 Sech, seek, 1052.  
 Seche, such, 1543.  
 Sege, } siege, 1, 2525.  
 Segge, }  
 \*Segg, } man, knight, 96, 115, 226,  
 Segge, } 394, 437, 574.  
 Segges, } men, 673, 822, 1438.  
 Segge3, }  
 Seghe, saw, 1705.  
 \*Seker=siker, sure, trusty, faithful, 265, 403.  
 Selden, seldom, 499.  
 \*Sele, good fortune, prosperity, 1938, 2409, 2422.  
 Sellokest, most surprising, 1439.  
 \*Selly, marvel, wonder, 475, 2170.  
 Selly, strange, 28; wondrously, 1194.  
 Sellye3, wonders, 239.  
 Sellyly, strangely, wondrously, 963, 1803.  
 Sellyly=selly, excellent, 1962.  
 Selure, canopy, 76.  
 Seluen, self, 51, 107, 113, 1548.  
 Semblaunce, } countenance, appear-  
 Semblaunt, } ance, behaviour,  
 148, 468, 1273, 1658.  
 Semble, assembly, 1429.  
 \*Seme, seemly, proper, 1085.  
 Semed, besemed, befitted, 73, 1929.  
 Semely, comely, fair, 672, 685.  
 Seme3, seams, borders, 610.  
 Semly, } fairly, suitably, becom-  
 Semlych, } ingly, courteously,  
 865, 882, 916, 1198, 1658.  
 Semloker, more seemly, fairer, 83.  
 Semlyly, becomingly, 622.  
 Sendal, fine silk, 76. According to Ducange it is a species of camelot.  
 Sene, truthful (?), 148, 341. O.Sw. sann, true.  
 Sene, to see, 712.

- \*Sere, several, 124, 682, 761, 822, 1982; diverse, 889, 2417; separately, 1522.
- \*Serlepes, severally, by turns, 501.
- Sertayn, certainly, 174.
- Serued, deserved, 1380.
- Seruyce, 751.
- Sese, to receive, 1825.
- Sesed, held, seized, 822, 1330.
- Sesed, ceased, 1, 1083, 2526.
- Sete=swete (?), 889.
- Settel, seat, chair, 882.
- Seuer, to part, 1988.
- Seueres, parts, 1797.
- \*Sewe, prepared dish of meat, perhaps a stew, 892.
- Sewes (*pl.*), 124, 889.
- Seye, to go, 1879.
- Se<sub>z</sub>,  
Se<sub>z</sub>e, } saw, 672, 707, 1619, 1911.  
Se<sub>z</sub>en, }
- Se<sub>z</sub>en, arrived, 1958.
- Sidborde<sub>z</sub>, 115.
- \*Siker, } sure, trusty, brave, 96,  
Syker, } 115, 2048, 2493.
- Siker, surely, 163.
- Siker, *vb.* to pledge, "*siker my trothe*"=pledge my word (troth), 1673; assure, 394.
- Sille, seat, 55. A.S. *sylla*, a chair.
- Skayned, wild, 2167. See note, p. 83.
- Skere=shere=pure, modest, 1261. A.S. *scir*.
- Skete, quickly, 19.
- \*Skwe<sub>z</sub>, clouds (?), shadows (?), 2167. Sir F. Madden suggests groves, shady coverts.
- \*Skyfted=shifted, changed, 19:
- \*Skyl, } reason, 1296, 1509:  
Skylle, }
- Skynne<sub>z</sub>, in phrase *any skynne<sub>z</sub>=any<sub>z</sub>-kynne<sub>z</sub>=any kind of*, 1539.
- Skyrte<sub>z</sub>, horse-trappings, 601; skirts of a robe, 865.
- \*Slade, valley, 2147.
- Slades, vallies, 1159.
- Slaked, ceased, 244. See note, p. 81.
- Slentyng, shooting, glancing, 1160. See note, p. 82.
- Slete, 729.
- \*Sle<sub>z</sub>e, ingenious, 797, 893.
- Sle<sub>z</sub>ly, slyly, softly, 1182.
- \*Sle<sub>z</sub>t, } stratagem, 1854, 1858.  
Sli<sub>z</sub>t, }
- Sle<sub>z</sub>te<sub>z</sub>=sleights, contrivances, 916.
- Slode=alided, slipt, 1182.
- Sloke (*vb. imp.*), stop, cease (talking), 412. O.N. *slaka*. See note, p. 81.
- Slomeryng, slumbering, 1182.
- Slot, pit of the stomach, 1330, 1593. According to some *skot* is the hollow above the breast-bone.
- "O-slante doune fro the *skote* he *slyttes* at ones."  
(*Morte Arthure*, p. 189.)
- Slypped, fallen, 244.
- Sly<sub>z</sub>t, skilful, 1542.
- Smartly, quickly, 407.
- Smeten, smote, 1763.
- Smethely, smoothly, 1789.
- \*Smolt, mild, 1763.
- Smothely, perfectly, 407.
- Snart, severely, sharply, 2003. O.N. *snart*.
- Snawe, snow, 956.
- Snayped, nipped, 2003. O.E. *snai<sub>p</sub>*, to snub, nip, pierce. O.N. *snai<sub>p</sub>a*.
- Snitered, drove, drifted, 2003.
- Soiourned, lodged, 2048.
- Solace, 570.
- Sop, hasty meal, 1135.
- Sore, grieved, 1826, 1988.
- \*Sor<sub>z</sub>e, imprecation, 1721; sorrow, 2415.
- Sostnaunce, 1095.
- \*Soth, } truth, 84, 355.  
Sothe, }
- Sethen, boiled, sodden, 892.
- Sothly, truly, 673, 976.
- Sounde (in-sounde), well, unhurt, 2489.



- Sounder, herd of wild swine, 1440.  
 Soundly, soundly, 1991.  
 \*Sourquydrye, pride, 311.  
 \*Sowme, number, 1321.  
 Sojt, went, departed, 685, 1438.  
 Spare-wise, moderately, temperately, 901.  
 Sparlyr, calf of the leg, 158. See Wyclif, Deuteron, xxviii., 35.  
 Sparthe, battle axe, 209.  
 Sped, hastened, went quickly, 1444.  
 Spede, profit, 918.  
 Speded, hastened, 979.  
 Spede, prosperest, 410.  
 Spedly, expediently, 1935.  
 Spek, } spake, 1117, 1288.  
 Spoken, }  
 \*Spelle, speech, narrative, 209, 1199, 2184.  
 Spelle, talkest, 2140.  
 Spend, } fastened, 158, 587. O.N.  
 Spenet, } *spenna*.  
 Spende (speche), to talk, 410.  
 Spenne, space, interval, 1074, 2316.  
 Spenné, spinny, quickset hedge, 1709, 1896.  
 Spetos, sharp, cruel, 209.  
 Spone, spoons, 886.  
 Spore, spurs, 587.  
 Sprenged, sprang, 1415; dawned, 2009.  
 Sprent, leapt, 1896.  
 Sprit, started, 2316.  
 Sprong, sprang, 670.  
 \*Spured, } =spered, inquired, 901,  
 Spuryed, } 2093.  
 Spyt, injury, 1444.  
 Stabled, established, 1069.  
 Stablye, station of huntsmen, 1153.  
 \*Stad, placed, disposed, 33, 644, 2137.  
 Staf-ful, quite full, 494.  
 \*Stale, }  
 Stalle, } seat, 104, 107.  
 Stalked, approached, moved, 237.  
 \*Stalworth, strong, powerful, brave, 846, 1659.  
 Stange, pole, staff, 1614. A.S. *stenge*. S.Prov.E. *stang*.  
 Stapled, furnished with staples, 981.  
 \*Starande, glittering, 1818.  
 Start, started, moved, 431, 1716.  
 Statut, agreement, covenant, 1060.  
 Staue, staff, 2139.  
 \*Sted, } place, 439, 2213, 2323.  
 Stedde, }  
 \*Stek, stuck, 152.  
 \*Stel, stole, 1191.  
 Stel-gere, steel-gear, armour, 260.  
 \*Stemed, } stood still, stopt, 230,  
 Stemmed, } 1117.  
 \*Steuën, voice, sound, 242, 2008, 2336; conference, 1060, 2194, 2213.  
 Stif, strong, brave, 104, 107, 322.  
 Stif, courageously, 671.  
 Stify, 287, 605.  
 Stirop, 2060.  
 Stithly, } stiffly, strongly, 431,  
 Stythly, } 575. A.S. *stith*, strong.  
 \*Stiztel, to dispose, 2137.  
 Stiztles, } sits, dwells, 104, 2213.  
 Stiztle, }  
 Stoffed, 606.  
 \*Stoken (*p.p.* of *stake*), secured, fastened, fixed, 33, 494, 782, 2194.  
 Ston-stil, 242.  
 Stonyed, confounded, astonished, 1291.  
 Stor, } strong, great, 1291, 1923.  
 Store, } A.S. *stór*, great, vast.  
 Stori, 34.  
 Stounde, time, 1567; bi-stounde, at times, 1517.  
 Stowned, confounded, astonished, 242, 301.  
 Strakande, blowing, 1364, 1923. A hunting term.  
 Strayne, restrain, curb, 176.  
 Streit, close, tight, 152.  
 Strok, stroke, 287.  
 Stroked (beard), 334.

Strokes, brandishes, 416.

\*Strothe, rugged, wild, 1710. See note, p. 83.

Strye, destroy, 2194.

Strythe, } position of the legs  
Stryththe, } when firmly placed,  
stride, 846, 2305.

Stubbe, stock of a tree, 2293.

Sture=stirs, brandishes, 331.

Sturne, stout, bold, 143; used substantively, 214.

Sturnely, 331.

Sturtes, stirrups, 171.

Stylly, softly, 1117.

Stytel, set, dispose, 2252.

Suande, following, 1467.

Sued, followed, 501, 1705.

Sues, follows, 510.

Sumned, summoned, 1052.

Sum-quat, somewhat, 86.

Sum-quyle, } once, formerly, 625,

Sum-whyle, } 720.

Sundred, severed, disjointed, 659.

Sure, 588.

Surfet, fault, 2433.

Surquidre, pride, 2457.

Swange, loins, 138; 2034. O.Sw.  
*swange*.

Swap, exchange, 1108.

\*Sware, square, 138.

\*Sware, answer, 1108.

Swared, answered, 1793, 2011.

Sware, answers, 1756.

\*Swenged, rushed, 1439.

Swengen, proceed, move quickly, 1615.

Swenges, starts, rushes, 1756.

Swere, swear, 403; swore, 1825.

\*Swete, "*in swete*"= in life, 2518.

Sir F. Madden renders it *suit*.

Swete, *adj.* used substantively, 1108, 1222.

Swete=sweet, fine, good, 180. Sir F. Madden renders it *sweated*.

Swethled, folded, 2034. A.S.  
*swethel*, a swaddling-band.

\*Sweuenes, dreams, 1756.

\*Sweyed, moved, pressed, 1429.

\*Swe, } follows, 1562; stooped,  
Swe, } 1796.

Swyere, squires, 824.

\*Swynge, rushes, 1562. See *Swenge*.

\*Swyre, neck, throat, 138, 186, 957.

\*Swythe, quickly, 8, 815, 1424, 2259; greatly, earnestly, 1860, 1866, 1897.

Swythely, quickly, much, 1479.

Swoghe (silence), dead (silence), 243. A.S. *swúgian*, to be silent. mute, astonished.

\*Syfle, blows, whistles, 517.

Sykande, sighing, 1796.

\*Syked, sighed, 672.

\*Syker, sure. See *Siker*.

Sykyng, sighing, 753.

Syluener=sylueren, *adj.* used substantively, silver, plate, 124.

Syluer-in, silver, 886.

Symple, 503.

Syngne, sign, token, 625.

\*Syn, since, 19, 24, 919, 1892.

\*Sythe, } times, 17, 632, 761,  
Sythes, } 1868.  
Sythe, }

Sythen, since, afterwards, next, 1, 6; 43, 115, 358, 1234, 1339.

Sy, } saw, 83, 200, 1582.  
Sy, }

Ta, take, 413, 2357.

Table, corbels (?), 789.

Tachched, } attached, fixed, 219,  
Tached, } 2512.

Tache, fastens, 2176.

\*Takles, gear, 1129.

Tale, speech, discourse, 1236.

Talenttyf, desirous, 350.

Talkande, talking, 108.

Talkyng, speech, 917.

Tan (*pl.*), take, 977, 1920.

Tan, taken, 490, 1210.

Tape, } stroke, blow, 406, 2357.  
Tappe, }

Tapit, carpet, 568; table (?), 884.

Tapites, } tapestry, 77, 858.

Tapyte, } tapestry, 77, 858.

Tars is stated by Ducange to mean *Tharsia*, a country adjoining to Cathay, but not to be confounded with Tartary. In 77, 858, it is named as the place where tapestries were manufactured, and in 571 a rich silk must be understood.

Taysed=teased (?), driven, harassed, 1169.

\*Tayt, lively, sportive, 988, and hence active, fierce, 1377. Sir F. Madden suggests *fair, plump*.

"The bustuns bukkis rakis furth on raw,  
Heyrdis of hertis throw the thyk wod-  
schaw,

Kyddis skippand throw ronnyis efter  
rays,

In lyssouris and on leys; litill lammys  
Full *tayt* and tryg socht blotand to  
thar dammys."

(G. Douglas, vol. ii., p. 758.)

Tajt, } taught, 1485, 2379.

Tajtte, } taught, 1485, 2379.

\*Teccheles, blameless, 917.

\*Tech, disposition, quality, 2488.

Teches (*pl.* of *tech*), 2436.

\*Telde, mansion, habitation, 11, 1775.

Telded, set up, built, 795, 884.

Teldet, set up, 1648.

Teldes, habitations, 11.

Temes, stories, themes, 1541.

\*Tene, *sb.* sorrow, mischief, 22.

Tene, *adj.* tedious, perilous, difficult, 1008, 1707, 2075.

Tene, *vb.* to grieve, 2002.

Tened, grieved, 2501; molested, 1169.

Tene, troubles, matters, 547.

Tenelyng, trouble (?), 1514.

\*Tent, *sb.* care, intent, attention, 624.

Tented, took care of, 1018.

Thar, need, 2354. A.S. *thearfan*.

That, used for *what*, 1406.

Tha, though, 350, 438, 467.

\*Thede, country, land, 1499.

Theder, thither, 935.

Then, than, 24, 236, 655.

Ther, } where, 353, 428; 874.

There, } where, 353, 428; 874.

Ther-forne, therefore, 1107.

Ther-tylle, thereto, 1110, 1369.

\*Thewes, } manners, 912, 916.

Thewe, } manners, 912, 916.

Thinkke, } seems, 1111, 1241,

Thynkke, } 1481, 1793, 2109.

\*Tho, those, 68, 466; the, 39, 1419.

Thof, though, 624.

\*Tholed, suffered, 1859, 2419.

Thonk, thanks, 1380.

Thonke, thank, 1984.

Thonkke, thanks, 1031.

Thore, there, 667.

Thot, seemed, 49, 803, 819, 870.

Thrast, thrust, 1443.

\*Thrat, threatened, 1713; compelled, urged, 1980.

Thrawen, bound, twisted, 194.

A.S. *thráwan*, to wind.

\*Thrawen, brawny, 579. In G. Douglas *thrawin* has the sense of fierce, bold, strong.

Thred, 1712.

\*Threpe, chiding, 1859, 2997.

Threpe, chides, reproves, and hence struggles with, 504.

Threted, threatened, 1725.

\*Thrich, push, rush, 1713.

\*Thro, earnest, eager, 645, 1713, 1751, 1868, 1946; quickly, 1021; bold, confident, 2300.

\*Throly, earnestly, 939.

\*Thronge, thrust, crowded, 1021.

Throw, time, while, 1680, 2219. A.S. *thrah*.

Throwen=thrown=exposed, 1740.

Sir F. Madden takes it to be another form of *thrawen*, plump.

Thrye, thrice, 763.

- Thryes, thrice, 1936.  
 \*Thrynge, crowdest, 2397.  
 \*Thrynne, three, 1868.  
 Thryuande, hearty, 1980.  
 Thryuandely, heartily, 1080, 1380.  
 \*Thryuen, well favoured, 1740.  
 \*Thryzt, threw, 1443; given, 1946.  
 Thulged=tholged=tholed, endured, 1859. A.S. *tholgian*, to endure, suffer.  
 \*Thurled=thirled, pierced, 1356.  
 Thur, } through, above, 91, 243,  
 Thurje, } 645.  
 Thuzt, thought, 843, 848.  
 Thwarle, tight, hard, 194. *Wharl-knot* is still used in the same sense in Lancashire.  
 Thwong, thong, 194.  
 Thwonges, thongs, 579.  
 Thy, therefore (?), 2247.  
 Thyze, thighs, 579.  
 \*Tit, } quickly, steadily, promptly,  
 Tyt, } 31, 299, 1596. See  
 Tite, } *As-tyt*.  
 Tyte, }  
 Titleres, hounds, 1726.  
 To, too, 1827.  
 To=te, go, 1671.  
 To-fylched, seized, pulled down, 1172.  
 To-hewe, to cut in pieces, 1853.  
 \*Tole, weapon, axe, 413, 2260.  
 \*Tolke, man, 1775, 1811, 1966.  
 See *Tulk*.  
 To-morn, } to-morrow, 548, 756,  
 To-morne, } 1097.  
 Tone=tane, betaken, committed, 2159.  
 Toppyng, mane(?), or top, head(?), 191.  
 Tor, tedious, difficult, 165, 719.  
 O.N. *tor* (a prefixal element denoting difficulty, trouble, etc.)  
 To-raced, run down, 1168.  
 Torche, 1119.  
 Toret=turrted, 960.  
 Tornayee, turns, wheels, 1707.  
 Tortors, turtles, 612.  
 Tornayle=labour, task, 1540. O.N. *torvelldr*. O.Scotch, *torfel*, to be fatigued, to pine away.  
 To-tachched, fastened, tied, 579.  
 Totes, peeps, looks, 1476. Swed. *titta*.  
 Tournayed, 41.  
 \*Towch, request, 1301.  
 Towches, sounds, 120.  
 Towche, covenants, 1677.  
 Towne, come, drawn, 1093. A.S. *teón* (*p.p. togen, ge-togen*), to pull, draw, to go.  
 Tozt, *adj.* behaved, mannered, 1869. Northumbrian *tazt*. O.E. *tauzt*.  
 Trammes, stratagems, 3.  
 Trantes, employs artifices or tricks, 1707. See Townely Mysteries, v. *Trant*.  
 Trased, twined, 1739.  
 Trauayl, fatigue, labour, 2241.  
 Trauayled, travelled, 1093.  
 Traunt, trick, 1700. See *Trantes*.  
 Trauthe, } troth, faith, fidelity,  
 Traweth, } 403, 626, 1050,  
 Trawthe, } 1545, 1638.  
 Trawe, to believe, 70, 90, 1396; *imp.* trust, 2112.  
 Trayle, hunt by the track or scent, 1700.  
 Trayst, assured, 1211.  
 Trayteres=trayueres=trauerce(?), 1700.  
 Treleted, adorned, 960.  
 Tressoun, head-dress, 1739.  
 Trestes, } trestles, supports of a  
 Trestez, } table, 884, 1648.  
 Tricherie, treachery, 4.  
 Tried, 4.  
 Trifel, } 108, 547.  
 Trifle, }  
 \*Trochet, a term of architecture, 795.  
 \*Trowe, to believe, 813, 2238.  
 True, *adj.* used substantively=truth(?), 1210.

- Trulofez, true-love knots, 612.  
 Trumpe, } trumpets, 116, 1016.  
 Trumpe, }  
 \*Trussen, pack up, 1129.  
 Trwe, true, 1091, 1514, 1845.  
 Trwluf, } true-love, 1527, 1540.  
 Trweluf, }  
 Tryed, fine, costly, good, 77, 219.  
 Tryst, trust, 380.  
 Tryster, } The stations allotted  
 Trysteres, } to different persons  
                   in hunting, 1146, 1170, 1712.  
 Trystyly, faithfully, 2348.  
 Tule=tuly (?), 568.  
 \*Tulk, man, knight, 3, 638, 2133.  
 \*Tulkes, men, 41.  
 Tuly seems to be equivalent, 858,  
   to Toulouse, 77, which place  
   seems then to have been famed  
   for its tapestries.  
 Tusche, tusks, 1563, 1579.  
 Tweyne, two, twain, 962, 1339.  
 Twyes, twice, 1522.  
 \*Twynne, to sever, part, 2512.  
 Twynne, two, 425.  
 Twynnen, twined, 191.  
 Tyffen, to array, put in order,  
   1129. O.N. *typpa*.  
 Tylle, to, 673, 1979.  
 \*Tyrrnen, flayed, 1921.  
 \*Tyt, promptly, speedily, 1596.  
 Tytelet, commencement, chief,  
   1515.  
 Tyxt, text, 1515, 1541.  
 \*Tyzt, fastened, tied, 568, 858.  
 Tyzt, undertake or endeavour (?),  
   2483.  
 \*Vch, } each, 101, 131, 628, 995,  
 Vche, }  
 Vcha=Northumbrian *ilka*, each,  
   742, 997, 1262.  
 Vchon, } each one, 98, 657,  
 Vchone, } 1113.  
 \*Vgly, horrible, 441; horribly, 2079.  
 \*Vmbe, around, about, 589, 1830,  
   2034.  
 Vmbe-clypped, encircled, embraced,  
   616.  
 Vmbe-folde, encircles, falls about,  
   181.  
 Vmbe-kesten, surrounded, 1434.  
 Vmbe-lappe, enfolds, 628.  
 Vmbe-teze, inclosed, 770; *teze* is  
   from the A.S. *teogan*, to draw,  
   *teah*, drew.  
 Vmbe-torne (=about, around (?),  
   Sir F. M.)=about-turned (?)=  
   twisted (?).  
 Vmbe-weued, enclosed, 581.  
 Vnbarred, 2070.  
 Vn-bene, rugged, impassable, 710.  
   See *Bene*.  
 Vnblythe, mournful, sorrowful,  
   sad, 746.  
 Vncely, mischievous, 1562.  
 Vncouth, strange, marvellous, 93,  
   1808.  
 Vndo, to cut up game; a hunting  
   term, 1327.  
 \*Vneth, scarcely, 134.  
 \*Vnhap, misfortune, 438, 2511.  
 Vnhardeled, dispersed, 1697. Fr.  
   *hardelle*, troupe.  
 Vnlace, to cut up, 1606.  
 Vnleute, disloyalty, 2499.  
 Vn-louked, unlocked, 1201.  
 Vn-mete, immense, 208.  
 Vn-rydely, ruggedly, 1432. O.E.  
   *unryde*, sharp, rough. A.S. *un-*  
   *gerýdu*, rugged; *ungerydelice*,  
   sharply; *gerýd*, smooth, even.  
 Vn-slayn, not slain, 1858.  
 Vn-slyze, careless.  
 Vn-soundyly, fiercely, 1438.  
 Vn-sparely, unsparingly, 979.  
 Vn-spurd, unasked, 918. See  
   *Spured*.  
 Vn-thryuande, uncourteous, 1499.  
 Vn-trawthe, unfaithfulness, 2383,  
   2509.  
 Vn-tyztel, if not an error for *vntyl*  
   *nyzte*, may mean *unrestrainedly*  
   (from *tyzt*, to fasten). Sir F.

- Madden renders it merrily. See *Tyt.*  
 Vp-brayde, drawn up, 781.  
 Vpon, at, 9, 301, 1934.  
 Vrysoun, the same as the *cointesse* or "kerchef of plesaunce," 608. Fr. *hourson*.  
 Vtter, out, outward, 1565.  
 Vayles, veils, 958.  
 Vayres, purity, 1015. Left unexplained by Sir F. Madden.  
 Ver, man, knight, 866. O.N. *ver*.  
 Verayly, 866.  
 Verdure, green, 161.  
 Vertuus=vertuous, precious, 2027.  
 Vewters, men who tracked deer by the *fewte* or odour, 1146.  
 Visage, 866.  
 Voyde, to quit, 346.  
 Voyded, got rid of, 1518; void, free, 634.  
 Voyde, casts, 1342.  
 Vyage, expedition, journey, 535.  
 Vylany, } fault, 345, 634.  
 Vylanye, }
- Wage, surety (?), 533.  
 Wages, 396.  
 Waked, kept awake, sat up at night, 1094.  
 \*Wakkest, weakest, 354.  
 \*Wakned, awakened, 119; shone, 1650.  
 \*Wale, to seek, 398; choose or possess, 1238.  
 \*Wale, lovely, worthy, 1010; choice, good, 1712, 1759.  
 Waled, chosen, 1276.  
 Walke, spreads, 1521.  
 Walle=wale, excellent, 1403.  
 \*Wallande, boiling, ferment, 1762.  
 \*Walt, threw, cast, 1336. O.N. *vellta*.  
 \*Walt, exercised, possessed, 231; enjoyed, 485.  
 \*Waltered, poured, was shed, 684.  
 \*Wan, came, 2231.
- Wande, bough, branch, 1161.  
 \*Wane, wanting, deficient, 498.  
 \*Wap, blow, 2249.  
 \*Wapped, flew with violence, as an arrow; rushed as the wind, 2004. O.N. *vappa*.  
 War! exclamation of the hunters, 1158.  
 "In the *Maister of the Game*, in the instructions for hunting the hare, the horsemen are directed 'for to kepe that none hownde folowe to sheepe, ne to other beestis, and if thei do, to ascrie hem sore, and bilaisshe hem wel, saying lowde, *Ware! Ware! ha, ha! Ware!*'"—MS. Cott., Vesp. B. xii., fol. 97b.  
 War, aware, 764, 1586.  
 Ware, to use, employ, 402, 1235.  
 Waret, acted, dealt, 2344.  
 Warly, warily, 1186, 1900.  
 Warloker, more warily, 677.  
 \*Warp, cast, 2253; cast, uttered, 224, 1423, 2025.  
 \*Warthe, water-ford, 715.  
 Waryst, protected, 1094.  
 Wast, waist, 144.  
 Waste, wilderness, 2098.  
 \*Wathe=wothe, injury, danger, 2355.  
 Wat, was, *passim*. had, 1413.  
 Waunden, wound, bound, 215.  
 \*Wayke, weak, 282.  
 \*Wayned, brought, 264, 984, 1032, 2456; sent, 2459.  
 \*Wayne(=wayue?), raises, 1743.  
 \*Wayte, to see, 306.  
 Wayted, looked, 2163.  
 Wayte, watches, looks, 1186, 2289.  
 Wayth, game, venison, 1381.  
 Wayued, stroked, moved, 306.  
 We! ah! 2185.  
 \*Wede, armour, clothing, part of the dress, 831, 1310, 2358.  
 Wedes, } armour, garments, 151,  
 Wede, } 271, 861; foliage of the groves, 508.  
 Wela-wylle, exceeding lonesome,

- desert, 2084. Cf. O.E. *wil-some*, lonely, desert; *wyl*, astray, forlorn.  
 \*Wela-wynne, very joyous, 518.  
 Welde, possess, enjoy, 835, 837, 1064.  
 Welde, possesses, 1528, 1542, 2454.  
 We-loo, alas! 2208.  
 \*Wele, wealth, riches, 7, 60, 1270, 1394; joy, 485, 1371, 1767, 2490; good fortune, 997, 2134.  
 Welkyn, sky, air, 525, 1696.  
 Welne, } almost, 7, 867.  
 Welne, }  
 \*Wende, } to go, 559, 1028, 1053;  
 Wende, } went, 90, 1161; gone, 1712.  
 Wende, thought, 669.  
 Wende, turns, 2152.  
 \*Wene, ween, think, 270, 1226.  
 Wener, fairer, 945. O.N. *wæn*. O.Dan. *wæn*, beautiful.  
 Wenged, avenged, 1518.  
 Went=wend=thought, 1711.  
 Weppen, weapon, 384.  
 Werbelande, warbling, whistling, 2004.  
 Werbles, notes, 119.  
 Were, wore, 1928.  
 Were, war, 271; hostility, 1628.  
 \*Were, to defend, ward off, 2015, 2041.  
 Werned, refused, denied, 1494.  
 Wernes, denies, 1824.  
 Wernynge, refusal, denial, 2253.  
 Werre, war, 16.  
 Werre, make war, 720.  
 Wesaund, wind-pipe, 1336.  
 Wesche, washed, 887.  
 Weterly, savagely, fiercely, 1706.  
 Weue, to give, 1975.  
 Weued, gave, 2359.  
 Wex, waxed, 319.  
 \*Wexed, carried, 1403.  
 Whirred, made a whirring noise, 2203.  
 What, how! lo! 1163, 2203.  
 What-so, whatsoever, 382, 1550.  
 Wheder-warde, whitherward, 1053.  
 Whene, queen, 74, 2492.  
 Whethen, whence, 871.  
 Whether, either of two, 203.  
 Whyrlande, rushing, 2222.  
 Whyssynes, cushions, 877.  
 Wich, what, 918.  
 Wit, } know, learn, 131, 255,  
 Wyt, } 1508.  
 Wit, with, 113.  
 With, } by, 664, 1153, 1229,  
 Wyth, } 2416.  
 \*Wyt, *adj.* great, strong, 1762; *sb.* strong, fierce (one), 1440.  
 \*Wlonk, fair, beautiful, 515, 581, 1977, 1988, 2432.  
 Wlonkest, fairest, 2025.  
 Wod, went, 787.  
 \*Wode, mad with anger, 2289.  
 Wod-crafter, skill in the arts of the chase, 1605.  
 Wodwos, wild men, monsters, 721.  
 A.S. *wudu-wasan*, wood satyrs, robbers.  
 Woke (*pret.* of *wake*), watched, sat up at night, 1025.  
 Woled=wolde=would, 1508.  
 Wolde, desirest, 2127; wouldst, 2128.  
 Wombe, belly, 144.  
 Won, } power or will, or rather  
 Wone, } possession, 1238; riches, wealth, 1269. S.Sax. *wunnen*.  
 \*Won, } dwelling, mansion, cham-  
 Wone, } ber, 257, 736, 906, 2490.  
 \*Won, } to dwell, 257, 814.  
 Wone, }  
 Wonde, dwelt. See *Woned*.  
 \*Wonde, to avoid, shrink back, 563.  
 Wonde, delay, 488.  
 Wonder, marvel(?), 16. Does it not rather signify sorrow? S.Sax. *wundre*, hurt, mischief.  
 Wonder, wondrous, 2200.  
 Wonderly, wondrously, 787, 1025.

- Wone, riches, wealth, 1269.  
 \*Woned, dwelt, 50, 701, 721.  
 \*Wonez, dwellings, mansions, 685, 1051, 1386, 2400.  
 \*Wonez, dwells, 399, 2098.  
 \*Wonnen, conducted, brought, 831; arrived, come, 461, 1365; brought, 2091.  
 Wont=woned=dwelt, abode, 17. Sir F. Madden renders it use, custom.  
 Wont, lack, want, 131.  
 Wont, fail, 987.  
 Wontez, fails, 1062.  
 Wonyd, dwelt, 2114.  
 Wonyes, dwells. See *Wonez*.  
 Worde, fame, reputation, 1521.  
 Worlde, Nature, 530.  
 \*Wornez, dragons, serpents, 720.  
 \*Worre, worse, 1588, 1591.  
 Wort, herb, 528.  
 \*Worth, to be, happen, 238, 1202, 1214, 1302; *subj.* be, 2127, 2374.  
 Worthed, was, became, 485; would be, 2096; become, 678.  
 Worthez, is, becomes, will or shall be, 2035, 1106, 1387.  
 Worthe, worthy, 559.  
 Worthilych, worthy, honourable, 343.  
 Worthy, worthily, 1477.  
 Worthy, *sb.* 1276, 1508.  
 Worthyly, honourably, properly, 72, 144.  
 \*Wot, know, 24.  
 \*Wothe, harm, mischief, injury, 222, 488, 1576.  
 Wowche-saf, vouchsafe, 1391.  
 \*Wowes, walls, 1180.  
 Woxes=waxes, grows, 518.  
 \*Woze, wrong, harm, 1550.  
 \*Woze, wall, 858.  
 Woze, walls, 1650.  
 \*Wrake, destruction, mischief, 16.  
 Wrast, loud, stern, 1423.  
 Wrast, advantage (?), 1663. A.S. *wrast*, good.  
 Wrast, disposed, 1482.  
 Wrastele;=wrestle; wrestles, 525.  
 Wrathed, troubled, annoyed, 726.  
 Wrathed, entangled, ensnared, 2420.  
 Wre;ande, reviling, 1706. A.S. *wre;an*, to accuse, to drive.  
 \*Wro, obscure corner, 2222.  
 Wroth, } violent, sharp, boister-  
 Wrothe, } ous, 70, 319, 525, 1706.  
 Wroth (*pret.* of *writhe*), moved round, 1200.  
 Wrothely, angrily, 2289.  
 Wrotheloker, more angrily, 2344.  
 Wro;ten, } occasioned, 3, 32.  
 Wro;ten, }  
 Wru;led, clad, folded, 2191.  
 \*Wyghe, } man, knight, 131, 249,  
 Wy; } 384, 581, 1487; ap-  
 Wy;e, } plied to God, 244.  
 Wykis, corners of the mouth, 1572.  
 Wyld, used substantively for beasts of the chase in general, 1150, 2003; and in the singular number, 1167, 1586, 1900, the words deer, boar, fox, being respectively understood.  
 Wyldrenesse, 701.  
 Wyle, } wily, 1728; used sub-  
 Wyly, } stantively, 1905.  
 \*Wylsum, wild, desert, and hence unpleasant, 689. O.E. *wyl*, forlorn.  
 \*Wylt=willed, wandered, escaped, 1711.  
 Wylyde, wild, amorous, 2367.  
 Wylnyng, will, 1546.  
 Wynde; returns, 530.  
 \*Wynne, joy, bliss, 15, 1765, 2420.  
 \*Wynne, goodly, 1032, 2430, 2456.  
 \*Wynne, to come, arrive at, 402, 1537, 2215.  
 Wynne-lych, cheerful, 980.  
 Wynne; proceeds, goes, 1569, 2044.  
 Wynt-hole, wind-hole, 1336.  
 Wypped, wiped, 2022.



Wypped, struck, 2249.  
 \*Wyrde, fate, 1752, 2134, 2418.  
 Wyrdes, destinies, 1968.  
 \*Wysse, teach, direct, 549, 739.  
 \*Wyste, } knew, 461, 1087, 1435.  
 Wysten, }  
 Wysty, desert, waste (?), 2189.  
 Wyt. See *Wit*.  
 Wyte, looks on, 2050.  
 Wy, See *Wyghe*.  
 Wyces, } men, 1403, 1167.  
 Wyce, }  
 Wyzt, person, wight, 1792.  
 \*Wyzt, loud, 119.  
 Wyzttest, bravest, 261.  
 Wyzttest, strongest(?), most rapid(?),  
 1591. We mi<sup>h</sup>t read *wydttest*=  
 widest.  
 Wyztly, quickly, 688.

Yrne, iron, 2267.  
 Yrnes, harness, armour, 729.  
 Ysse-ikkles, icicles, 732.  
 \*Ye, eye, 198.  
 Ye-lydde, eye-lids, 446.  
 Yen, eyes, 82, 304, 684.

zarande, } loud, snarling, 1595,  
 zarrande, } 1724. S.Sax. *zuren*,  
 to chatter.

\*zare=yare, quickly, soon, 2410.  
 \*zarked, made ready, 820.  
 \*zarkke, makes ready, disposes,  
 2410.

zaule, howl, 1458.  
 zayned, hallooed, 1724. S.Sax.  
*zien*, to cry. O.N. *geya*, to  
 bark.

ze, yea, 813, 1091, 1497; still,  
 ever, 1729.

zede, } went, 817, 1122, 1400,  
 zeden, } 1684.

\*zederly, promptly, soon, 453,  
 1215, 1485, 2325.

\*zelde, requite, 1038, 1263; yield,  
 1215.

\*zelde, } yielded, gave, 67, 1595,  
 zelden, } 1981.

zelde, returns, 498.

zelle, yell, 1453.

zelpyng, pomp, ostentation, 492.

\*zep, } active, alert, 60, 105, 284,  
 zepe, } 1510; fair, 951.

zeply, promptly, 1981, 2244.

zer, year, 60, *et alib*.

\*zern, } quickly, 498; earnestly,  
 zerne, } eagerly, 1478, 1526.

\*zernes, } runs, passes away  
 zirnez, } quickly, 498, 529.

A.S. *ge-urnen*.

zet, yet, 1122.

\*zette, grant, 776.

\*zeze, ask, 1215,

zezed, asked, 67.

zif, if, 1494, 1496.

zirnez. See *zernes*.

zod, went, 1146.

zol, Christmas, 284, 500.

zolden, yielded, 453, 820. See *zolds*.

zolje, yellow, tawny, 951.

\*zomerly, lamentably, piteously,  
 1453.

zonge, younger one, 951.

zonge-er, youth, 492.

zonke=zonge, young person, 1526.

\*zore, yore, long time, 2114.

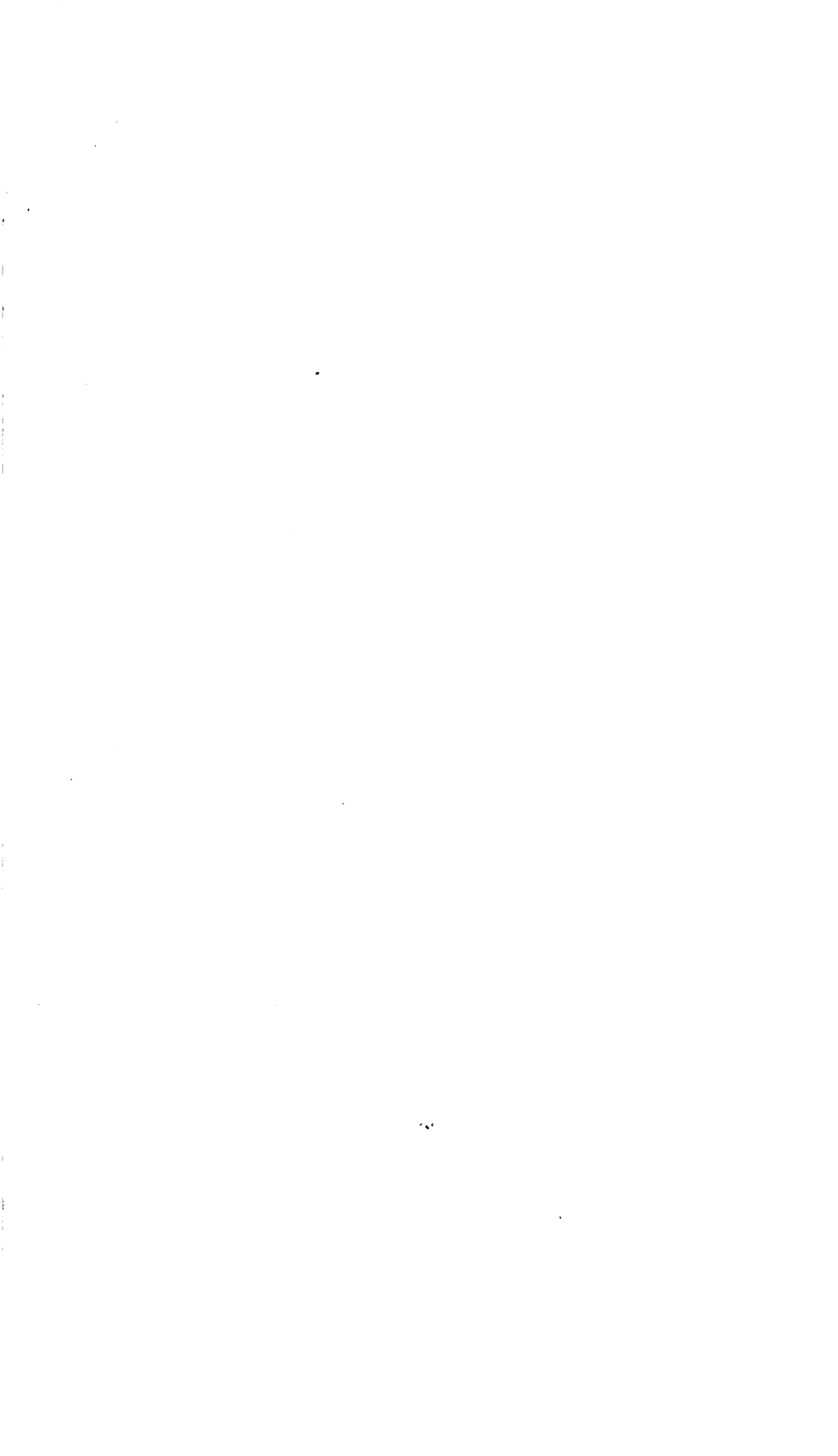
RESERVED

JUN 20 1952

BOOK ROOM

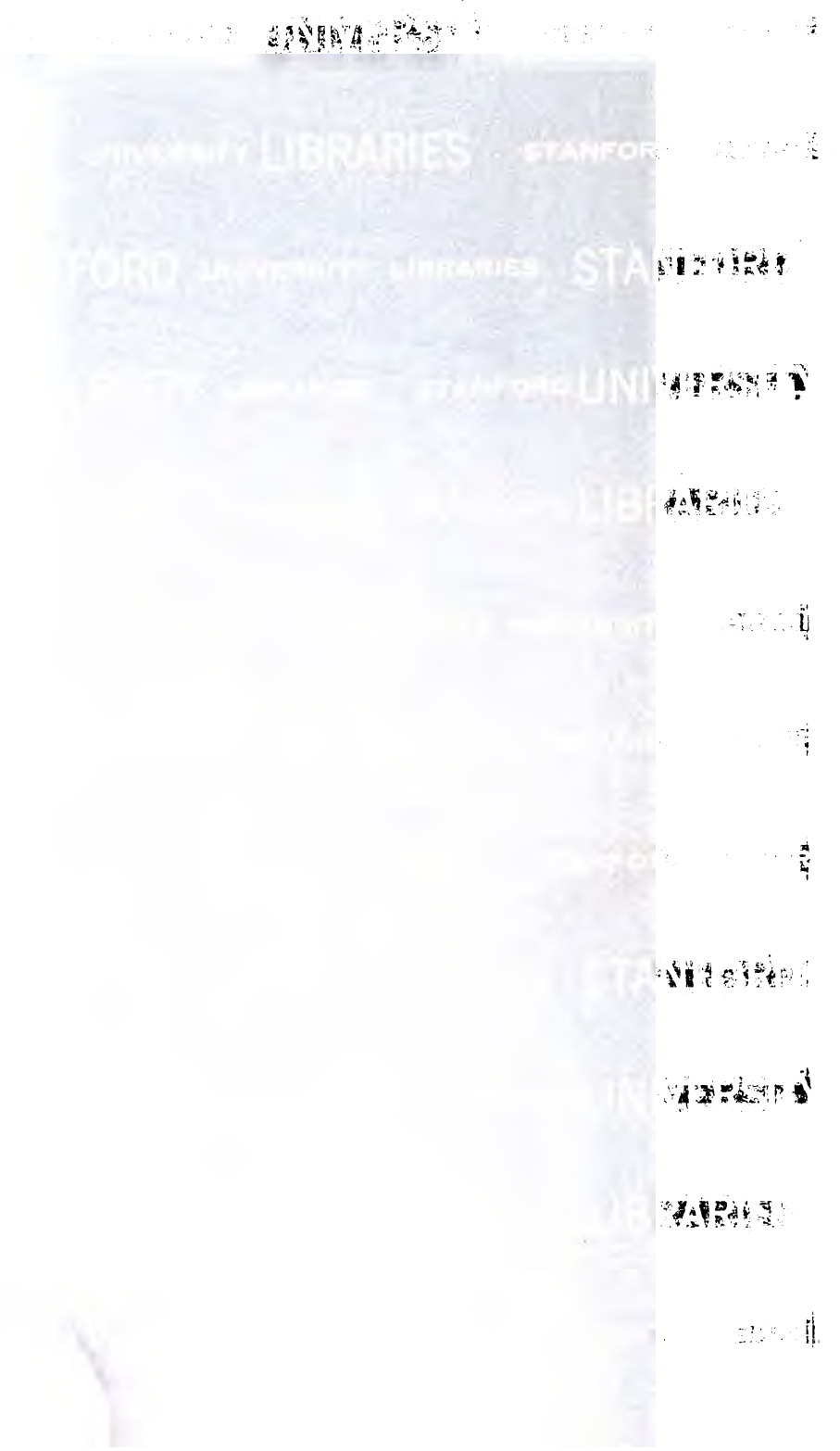
RESERVED

JAN 1 - 1952









Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 005 675 348

820.6  
E12  
V.4

Stanford University Libraries  
Stanford, California

Return this book on or before date due.

JAN 20 '87

1000 1 1 1000

